ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9

PHYTOCHEMICAL INSIGHTS

TECHNIQUES AND APPLICATIONS VOLUME I

EDITORS:
DR. MUKUL M. BARWANT
DR. BASSA SATYANNARAYANA
SMT. KAMIREDDY MAHALAXMI

Bhumi Publishing, India
First Edition: December 2025

Phytochemical Insights: Techniques and Applications Volume I

(ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9)

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.17876298

Editors

Mukul Macchindra Barwant

Department of Botany,

Sanjivani Arts, Commerce and Science College,

Kopargaon, Ahmednagar, Maharashtra

E-mail: mukulbarwant97@gmail.com

Bassa Satyannarayana

Department of Chemistry,

Govt. M.G.M. P.G. College, Itarsi, Madhya Pradesh

E-mail: satya.bassa@gmail.com

Smt. Kamireddy Mahalaxmi

Department of Chemistry,

Govt. M.G.M. P.G. College, Itarsi, Madhya Pradesh

E-mail: kamireddymahalaxmi1996@gmail.com

Bhumi Publishing

December 2025

Title: Phytochemical Insights: Techniques and Applications Volume I

Editors: Mukul M. Barwant, Bassa Satyannarayana and Smt. Kamireddy Mahalaxmi

First Edition: December 2025

ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.17876298

Published by:

BHUMI PUBLISHING

Nigave Khalasa, Tal – Karveer, Dist – Kolhapur, Maharashtra, INDIA 416 207

E-mail: **bhumipublishing@gmail.com**

PREFACE

It gives us immense pleasure to present Phytochemical Insights: Techniques and Applications, Volume I, a comprehensive initiative aimed at exploring the vast scientific potential of plant-derived bioactive compounds. Phytochemicals, long appreciated in traditional medicinal systems, have gained renewed importance in contemporary research due to their diverse structural complexity, ecological functions, and broad spectrum of biological activities. Today, the identification, characterization, and application of phytoconstituents represent one of the most dynamic and interdisciplinary domains in life science.

This volume brings together scholarly contributions focused on major phytochemical classes, advancements in extraction and separation techniques, and recent innovations in analytical approaches. Chapters included in this book highlight essential methodologies such as chromatography, spectroscopy, and metabolomic profiling, while also addressing emerging tools that enhance reproducibility, accuracy, and efficiency in phytochemical research. By connecting fundamental concepts with advanced applications, the book provides a valuable resource for students, researchers, academicians, and professionals engaged in pharmacognosy, biotechnology, pharmaceutical sciences, and natural product chemistry.

Beyond technical aspects, Phytochemical Insights: Techniques and Applications, Volume I emphasizes the translational scope of plant-based bioactives in drug discovery, nutraceutical development, and sustainable therapeutic strategies. The authors have presented case studies, experimental observations, and literature-based evaluations to broaden our understanding of phytochemicals in addressing global health challenges.

We extend our sincere appreciation to all contributors for their scientific dedication and thoughtful work. Our gratitude is also due to the editorial team, reviewers, and all individuals whose support made this publication possible. We believe this volume will inspire further inquiry, encourage interdisciplinary collaboration, and serve as a foundation for future innovations in phytochemical research.

We humbly present this book to the scientific community with the hope that it will stimulate meaningful research and contribute toward advancing knowledge in natural product science.

- Editors

TABLE OF CONTENT

Sr. No.	Book Chapter and Author(s)	Page No.
1.	**CHEMISTRY OF SECONDARY METABOLITES: ALKALOIDS, TERPENES, PHENOLICS AND GLYCOSIDES** Arati Tamta	1 – 5
2.	**THE SIGNIFICANCE OF PHYTOCHEMICALS AS A PRECURSOR IN THE COSMETICS SECTOR** Akhil Kumar S	6 – 11
3.	**CHEMISTRY OF PRIMARY METABOLITES (CARBOHYDRATES, PROTEINS AND LIPIDS)** Komal Soni	12 – 19
4.	**PHYTOCHEMICALS IN NUTRACEUTICALS AND FUNCTIONAL FOODS** Anurag Chourasia	20 – 26
5.	**COSMETIC APPLICATIONS OF PHYTOCHEMICALS** Shanmugapriya R	27 – 32
6.	**PHYTOCHEMICALS IN AGRICULTURE AND CROP PROTECTION** Akila Ilangovan and Charumathy Marimuthu	33 – 39
7.	**BEYOND NUTRITION: LEVERAGING PHYTOCHEMICALS FOR NEXT-GENERATION NUTRACEUTICALS** J. Shoba and Sr.C. Shibana	40 – 59
8.	**CLASSIFICATION OF THE PLANT BIOACTIVE COMPOUNDS** Anand Chaurasia and Surjeet Singh Jat	60 – 65
9.	**CLASSIFICATION OF PLANT BIOACTIVE COMPOUNDS** Gaviraj E. N, Santosh R Karajgi, Nanjappaiah H.M and Santosh R Awasti	66 – 73
10.	**ANTIOXIDANT PHYTOCHEMICALS AND THEIR MECHANISMS** B. Thendral Hepsibha	74 – 81
11.	**TRADITIONAL EXTRACTION METHODS** Anand Chaurasia and Surjeet Singh Jat	82 – 90

12.	**SPECTROSCOPIC FOUNDATION IN PHYTOCHEMISTRY: UV–VISIBLE AND NMR APPROACHES** Deepika Jain	91 – 95
13.	**PHYTOCHEMICALS AS ALTERNATIVE FUNGICIDES FOR CONTROLLING PLANT DISEASES: FRUITS AND VEGETABLES** L. Nivetha	96 – 106
14.	**MASS SPECTROMETRY IN STRUCTURAL ELUCIDATION OF PHYTOCHEMICALS** Pankaj V. Ledade, Nitu G. Parchake, Dnyaneshwar N. Lanjewar and Harihar P. Dahikar	107 – 125
15.	**FROM PLANTS TO DEFENSE: ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTIBACTERIAL BIOACTIVES** Seethalaxmi Radhakrishna	126 – 135
16.	**IMPACT OF LACK OF SOCIAL AWARENESS ON WATER CONSERVATION** Sharmila Jain	136 – 141
17.	**POLLINATION IN PUMPKIN (CUCURBITA SPP.)** Bendangsenla Longkumer	142 – 145
18.	**SUSTAINABLE RICE-BASED CROPPING SYSTEMS FOR ENHANCING PRODUCTIVITY AND SOIL HEALTH** Th. Nengparmoi	146 – 149
19.	**IMPACT OF CLIMATE CHANGE ON POULTRY PRODUCTION** Gaurav Dubey, Ankur Dwivedi, A Amet Keikung, Samar Thakuria, Velato Nyekha, V. K. Vidyarthi and R Zuyie	150 – 153

(ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9)

Chapter
1

CHEMISTRY OF SECONDARY METABOLITES: ALKALOIDS, TERPENES, PHENOLICS AND GLYCOSIDES

ARATI TAMTA

Quantum School of Health Sciences, Quantum University, Roorkee

ABSTRACT

Secondary metabolites are organic compounds produced by plants, fungi, and microorganisms that are not directly involved in growth, development, or reproduction but play crucial roles in ecological interactions, defense mechanisms, and human applications. This manuscript explores the chemistry of four major classes: alkaloids, terpenes, phenolics, and glycosides. We discuss their structural features, biosynthetic pathways, biological activities, and significance in pharmaceuticals, agriculture, and industry. Emphasizing their molecular diversity and reactivity, this review highlights how these compounds contribute to biodiversity and human health. The content is synthesized from established biochemical principles to provide an original overview, ensuring originality while drawing on foundational knowledge.

KEYWORDS: Alkaloids, Terpenes, Phenolics, Glycosides**.**

INTRODUCTION

Secondary metabolites represent a vast array of chemical diversity in nature, evolved primarily for survival advantages such as deterring herbivores, attracting pollinators, or inhibiting microbial competitors. Unlike primary metabolites (e.g., amino acids, nucleotides), which are essential for basic cellular functions, secondary metabolites are often species-specific and influenced by environmental factors. They are classified based on biosynthetic origins, including nitrogen-containing alkaloids, isoprenoid-derived terpenes, phenyl propanoid-based phenolics, and sugar-linked glycosides.

The chemistry of these compounds involves intricate pathways like the shikimate, mevalonate, and polyketide routes, leading to complex structures with functional groups that dictate their bioactivity. Alkaloids, for instance, often feature basic nitrogen atoms, enabling interactions with biological targets. Terpenes exhibit hydrocarbon skeletons with varying degrees of oxidation, while phenolics are characterized by aromatic rings and hydroxyl groups, conferring antioxidant properties. Glycosides, as conjugates of aglycones with sugars, enhance solubility and modulate toxicity. Understanding their chemistry is pivotal for drug discovery, as many pharmaceuticals (e.g., morphine from alkaloids, taxol from terpenes) originate from these sources. This manuscript delves into each class, focusing on structural chemistry, synthesis, and applications, while maintaining a concise scope.

ALKALOIDS

STRUCTURAL CHEMISTRY

Alkaloids are a heterogeneous group of nitrogen-containing secondary metabolites, typically derived from amino acids. Their defining feature is the presence of at least one nitrogen atom, often in a heterocyclic ring, which imparts basicity (pKa around 7-12). Structures vary widely: simple (e.g., coniine, a piperidine alkaloid) to complex polycyclic systems (e.g., strychnine with indole and quinoline moieties).

Classification is based on biosynthetic precursors:

1. True alkaloids: From amino acids like ornithine (pyrrolidine alkaloids), lysine (piperidine), tyrosine (isoquinoline), or tryptophan (indole).
2. Protoalkaloids: Lacking heterocyclic nitrogen (e.g., ephedrine).
3. Pseudoalkaloids: From non-amino acid sources (e.g., purine alkaloids like caffeine).

Key functional groups include amines, amides, and amines, which facilitate hydrogen bonding and protonation, enhancing solubility in acidic environments.

BIOSYNTHESIS

Biosynthesis often starts with decarboxylation of amino acids to form amines, followed by condensation, cyclization, and oxidation. For example, the indole alkaloid pathway involves tryptophan condensing with secologanin (a terpenoid) via strictosidine synthase to form strictosidine, a precursor to vinblastine and vincristine.

In plants like Papaver somniferum, tyrosine is converted to dopamine and 4-hydroxyphenylacetaldehyde, leading to norcoclaurine and eventually morphine through the benzylisoquinoline pathway. Enzymatic steps involve cytochrome P450 oxidases and methyltransferases, regulated by environmental stress.

BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES AND APPLICATIONS

Alkaloids exhibit potent pharmacological effects due to their ability to mimic neurotransmitters or block enzymes. Morphine, an opiate alkaloid, binds to μ-opioid receptors for analgesia but poses addiction risks. Quinine, a cinchona alkaloid, intercalates DNA to combat malaria. Nicotine affects nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, underlying tobacco addiction.

In agriculture, alkaloids like solanine in potatoes deter pests. Industrially, they serve as precursors for dyes and pesticides. Challenges include toxicity; for instance, ergot alkaloids cause vasoconstriction leading to ergotism.

Recent advances involve synthetic modifications, such as semisynthesis of codeine derivatives, to reduce side effects. Alkaloids' chirality often dictates activity, necessitating stereoselective synthesis.

TERPENES

STRUCTURAL CHEMISTRY

Terpenes, also known as isoprenoids, are hydrocarbons built from five-carbon isoprene units (C_5H_8), following the "isoprene rule." They are classified by the number of isoprene units:

monoterpenes (C10, e.g., limonene), sesquiterpenes (C15, e.g., farnesene), diterpenes (C20, e.g., gibberellic acid), triterpenes (C30, e.g., squalene), and tetraterpenes (C40, e.g., carotenoids).

Structures range from acyclic (e.g., myrcene) to cyclic (e.g., menthol with cyclohexane ring). Functionalizations include alcohols (terpenols), aldehydes, ketones, and ethers, increasing polarity. Steroids, a subclass of triterpenes, feature fused rings like in cholesterol.

Their lipophilic nature aids membrane integration, while double bonds enable conjugation and reactivity.

BIOSYNTHESIS

Terpenes originate from two pathways: the mevalonate (MVA) pathway in cytosol (for sesqui-, tri-, and polyterpenes) and the methylerythritol phosphate (MEP) pathway in plastids (for mono-, di-, and tetraterpenes).

In the MVA pathway, acetyl-CoA condenses to form HMG-CoA, reduced to mevalonate, then phosphorylated and decarboxylated to isopentenyl pyrophosphate (IPP). IPP isomerizes to dimethylallyl pyrophosphate (DMAPP), and head-to-tail condensations by prenyltransferases build longer chains. Cyclization via terpene synthases introduces diversity; for example, limonene synthase cyclizes geranyl pyrophosphate.

Regulation involves feedback inhibition and compartmentalization, with environmental cues like light inducing carotenoid synthesis.

BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES AND APPLICATIONS

Terpenes function in plant defense (e.g., α-pinene as insect repellent), pigmentation (β-carotene), and hormone signaling (abscisic acid). In humans, taxol (paclitaxel), a diterpene from Taxus brevifolia, stabilizes microtubules for cancer chemotherapy. Artemisinin, a sesquiterpene lactone, generates radicals to kill Plasmodium parasites.

Essential oils rich in monoterpenes (e.g., lavender's linalool) offer aromatherapy benefits. Industrially, rubber (polyisoprene) and resins derive from terpenes. Challenges include volatility and oxidation sensitivity, addressed by encapsulation.

Synthetic biology enables microbial production, such as engineering yeast for artemisinin precursors, reducing reliance on plant extraction.

PHENOLICS

STRUCTURAL CHEMISTRY

Phenolics encompass compounds with one or more hydroxyl groups attached to aromatic rings, derived from phenylalanine via the shikimate pathway. They include simple phenols (e.g., catechol), phenolic acids (e.g., salicylic acid), flavonoids (e.g., quercetin with C6-C3-C6 skeleton), tannins (polymeric flavonoids), and lignans (dimeric phenylpropanoids).

Key features: Aromaticity provides stability, while -OH groups enable hydrogen bonding, radical scavenging, and metal chelation. Flavonoids subclassify into flavones, flavonols, anthocyanin's (pigmented), and isoflavones, with glycosylations enhancing diversity.

Their polarity varies; hydrophilic anthocyanins color fruits, while lipophilic lignins strengthen cell walls.

BIOSYNTHESIS

The shikimate pathway converts phosphoenolpyruvate and erythrose-4-phosphate to chorismate, then to phenylalanine. Phenylalanine ammonia-lyase (PAL) deaminates it to cinnamic acid, initiating the phenylpropanoid pathway. Hydroxylations by P450 enzymes yield p-coumaric acid, condensed with malonyl-CoA by chalcone synthase to form chalcones, precursors to flavonoids.

Tannins form via polymerization of flavan-3-ols. Environmental stressors upregulate PAL, boosting phenolic accumulation for UV protection.

BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES AND APPLICATIONS

Phenolics are potent antioxidants, neutralizing free radicals via electron donation. Resveratrol, a stilbene, activates sirtuins for anti-aging effects. Anthocyanins in berries reduce inflammation by inhibiting NF-κB.

In plants, they deter pathogens (e.g., phytoalexins) and attract pollinators. Medicinally, aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) inhibits cyclooxygenase for pain relief. Tannins in tea provide astringency and antimicrobial properties.

Industrial uses include dyes (e.g., from henna) and preservatives. Toxicity concerns arise with high doses, potentially causing liver damage. Green extraction methods, like ultrasound-assisted, and improve sustainability.

GLYCOSIDES

STRUCTURAL CHEMISTRY

Glycosides are conjugates where a sugar (glycone, e.g., glucose) links to a non-sugar moiety (aglycone) via glycosidic bonds (O-, N-, S-, or C-linked). Aglycones can be alcohols, phenols, or thiols, classifying glycosides as alcoholic (e.g., salicin), phenolic (e.g., arbutin), or cyanogenic (e.g., amygdalin releasing HCN).

The sugar component enhances water solubility and stability, masking the aglycone's reactivity until hydrolysis by β-glucosidases. Structures vary: Cardiac glycosides like digitoxin feature steroid aglycones with lactone rings, affecting stereochemistry.

BIOSYNTHESIS

Biosynthesis involves UDP-glycosyltransferases transferring sugars from UDP-glucose to aglycones. For saponins (triterpene glycosides), the aglycone forms via the MVA pathway, then glycosylated in the cytosol.

In cyanogenic glycosides, amino acids like tyrosine convert to oximes, then to nitriles, and glycosylated. Compartmentalization prevents premature hydrolysis; damage releases toxins for defense.

BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES AND APPLICATIONS

Glycosides modulate bioavailability; hydrolysis activates aglycones. Digitoxin inhibits Na^+/K^+-ATPase for heart failure treatment. Saponins in soapnuts foam and exhibit hemolytic activity.

Cyanogenic glycosides deter herbivores via HCN release. In food, steviol glycosides from Stevia provide zero-calorie sweetness. Anticancer potential exists in ginsenosides from ginseng, which induce apoptosis.

Challenges include bitterness and toxicity; processing removes harmful glycosides from cassava. Biotransformation enhances therapeutic profiles.

CONCLUSION

The chemistry of secondary metabolites—alkaloids, terpenes, phenolics, and glycosides—underscores nature's ingenuity in producing bioactive molecules. Their structural complexities, from nitrogen heterocycles to isoprene chains and aromatic hydroxyls, enable diverse functions in ecology and medicine. Biosynthetic pathways intersect, allowing metabolic engineering for sustainable production. Future research may focus on synthetic analogs and omics approaches to uncover novel compounds. These metabolites not only sustain biodiversity but also fuel innovations in health and industry, emphasizing the need for conservation of source organisms.

REFERENCES

[1]. Dewick, P. M. (2009). Medicinal Natural Products: A Biosynthetic Approach. John Wiley & Sons.

[2]. Croteau, R., *et al.* (2000). Natural Products (Secondary Metabolites). *Biochemistry & Molecular Biology of Plants.

[3]. Harborne, J. B. (1999). Classes and Functions of Secondary Plant Products. Plant Secondary Metabolism.

[4]. Taiz, L., & Zeiger, E. (2010). Plant Physiology. Sinauer Associates.

[5]. Wink, M. (2010). Biochemistry of Plant Secondary Metabolism. Wiley-Blackwell

Chapter
2

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF PHYTOCHEMICALS AS A PRECURSOR IN THE COSMETICS SECTOR

AKHIL KUMAR S

N.S.S. College, Pandalam, Pathanamthitta - 689501

ABSTRACT

Bioactive substances called phytochemicals, which come from plants, are revolutionizing the cosmetics business because of their anti-aging, skin-repairing, and antioxidant qualities. Applications for phytochemistry can be found in the food business as functional food additives, nutraceuticals, and preservatives; in the pharmaceutical industry for medication discovery and treatment; and in the cosmetics sector for products that are both aesthetically pleasing and healthful. Additionally, it plays a part in agrochemicals, as demonstrated by the use of phytochemicals in biopesticides, and it promotes gut health and functions as an antibacterial, antioxidant, and anti-inflammatory to support health and wellness. Enhancing bioavailability, resolving stability concerns, creating efficient standardization for quality control, negotiating complex regulatory hurdles, and tackling supply chain volatility and sustainability are some of the future problems facing phytochemicals. In addition to creating novel delivery systems like nanoparticles to increase their therapeutic potential, it is crucial to conduct thorough, extensive clinical trials to verify safety and efficacy in humans.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemistry, Cosmetics, Flavanoids, Antioxidants.

INTRODUCTION

The presence and secretions of phytochemicals, which are bioactive substances found naturally in plants, differ from one plant to another. Terpenoids, polyphenols, phenolic compounds, alkaloids, carotenoids, phytosterols, saponins, and fibers are the most common classes.

Plants generate secondary metabolites called phytochemicals, which have structural, signaling, and defensive functions (Fayaz, *et al.*, 2024). They are widely used in cosmetics for their capacity to improve skin health, delay the aging process, and guard against environmental harm. Phytochemicals, as compared to synthetic substances, provide a comprehensive approach to skincare, satisfying the rising demand from consumers for sustainable, eco-friendly, and clean beauty products.

CLASSIFICATION OF PHYTOCHEMICALS USED IN COSMETICS

A vast variety of compounds with distinct qualities that are advantageous for skin and hair care are referred to as phytochemicals. Based on their structure, the most important categories of phytochemicals used in cosmetics are usually divided into key chemical groups (Sahu, *et al.*, 2008). These substances have a number of qualities that are valued in skincare products, including antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, and antioxidant benefits.

Table 1: Phytochemicals Used in Cosmetics

Phytochemicals	Sources	Examples	Benefits
Flavonoids	Citrus fruits, Berries, Green tea	Quercetin, Rutin, Kaempferol	Antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, UV protection
Polyphenols	Grapes, Olives, Cocoa	Resveratrol, Epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG)	Anti-aging, Skin brightening, Collagen protection
Terpenoids	Essential Oils, Herbs	Limonene, Squalene, Menthol	Moisturizing, Antimicrobial, Soothing
Alkaloids	Coffee, Tea, Medicinal herbs	Caffeine, Berberine	Circulation-boosting, Anti-cellulite, anti-inflammatory
Carotinoids	Carrots, tomatoes, marigold	Beta-carotene, Lutein, Astaxanthin	UV protection, Skin tone enhancement, Antioxidant

MECHANISMS OF PHYTOCHEMICALS IN SKIN CARE

Phytochemicals improve skin structure by promoting collagen synthesis and preventing degradation, lowering inflammation by modifying inflammatory pathways, and offering antioxidant defence against free radicals and UV damage (Galbau, *et al.,* 2024). By scavenging free radicals, boosting endogenous antioxidants like glutathione, controlling signalling pathways like Nrf2 and NF-κB, and blocking enzymes that degrade collagen and other structural elements, they accomplish these goals. Phytochemicals act through multiple pathways to improve skin health:

ANTIOXIDANT DEFENCE

As strong antioxidants, phytochemicals shield the skin from free radicals, which are dangerous substances that lead to oxidative stress and skin damage from things like UV rays. By lowering inflammation, preventing the breakdown of collagen, improving skin healing, and strengthening the skin's natural defences, these plant-derived ingredients promote elasticity, moisture, and the appearance of healthier, younger skin.

Phytochemicals lower the overall oxidative stress that causes cellular damage, inflammatory disorders, and premature skin aging by scavenging free radicals. Numerous phytochemicals have anti-inflammatory qualities that help to heal inflamed skin and prevent the synthesis of cytokines and other pro-inflammatory mediators (Tomas, *et al.,* 2025). Certain phytochemicals have the ability to activate pathways like Nrf2 and upregulate antioxidant enzymes, which are the body's natural defensive mechanisms against oxidative stress and environmental assaults.

ENZYME INHIBITION

Various skin enzymes are inhibited by phytochemicals to treat common issues like inflammation, hyperpigmentation, and aging. These plant-derived chemicals can protect structural proteins, lower melanin formation, and mitigate the impact of environmental stresses by inhibiting the activity of important enzymes.

Enzymes such as collagenase and elastase degrade the structural proteins that give skin its firmness and flexibility as it ages. By preventing these damaging enzymes from working, phytochemicals can aid in the preservation of these proteins.

TARGETED ENZYMES AND PHYTOCHEMICALS:

Collagenase: This Matrix Metalloproteinase (MMP-1) enzyme breaks down collagen, causing sagging and wrinkles (Kaur and Kapoor, 2001). By preserving the collagen structure of the skin, these substances help to keep it firm and less prone to wrinkles.

Elastase: The elastin fibers that give the skin its resilience are broken down by this enzyme. Elastase activity can be inhibited by carotenoids like lutein and fucoxanthin, as well as polyphenols like EGCG from green tea. Elastase inhibition maintains skin elasticity, resulting in firmer, more resilient skin.

The tyrosinase enzyme controls the overproduction of melanin, which results in hyperpigmentation like age spots or melasma (Thakur, *et al.,* 2011). As strong tyrosinase inhibitors, a variety of phytochemicals provide a safer substitute for various artificial skin-whitening products.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY EFFECTS

By scavenging free radicals, preventing UV damage, and lowering pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNF-α and IL-6, phytochemicals provide anti-inflammatory effects for skin. Examples include flavonoids like quercetin, carotenoids like astaxanthin, and polyphenols like resveratrol and green tea catechins, which all help to combat the effects of aging while promoting collagen synthesis, hydration, and the function of the skin barrier (Saaed, *et al.,* 2017). By stimulating anti-inflammatory cytokines and decreasing the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines (including TNF-α and IL-6), phytochemicals can reduce inflammation. Numerous phytochemicals are strong antioxidants that counteract free radicals, which lead to oxidative stress, inflammation, and skin damage (Petrovic, *et al.,* 2019).

SKIN BRIGHTENING

By preventing the production of melanin and lowering oxidative stress, which can result in hyperpigmentation, phytochemicals have skin-brightening effects (Dureja *et al.,* 2005). Curcumin, liquiritin, and ellagic acid are examples of compounds that function by neutralizing free radicals that harm skin cells and cause dark spots, as well as by inhibiting tyrosinase, an enzyme essential to the synthesis of melanin. Green tea, licorice root, and turmeric are common plant sources that also have anti-inflammatory properties (Panico, 2019). By directly preventing the synthesis of melanin, the pigment that gives skin its color and black patches, phytochemicals can lighten skin. Phytochemicals reduce cellular damage that can result in hyperpigmentation and uneven skin tone by scavenging free radicals generated by UV radiation and environmental factors (Pazyar, *et al.*, 2012). Certain phytochemicals have anti-inflammatory properties that can soothe skin and lessen inflammation, which is one of the factors that cause skin discoloration.

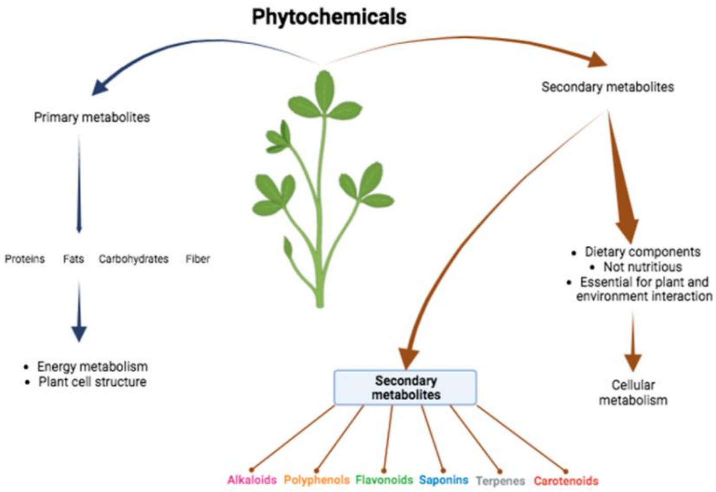


Figure 1: Mechanisms of Phytochemicals

APPLICATIONS IN COSMETIC FORMULATIONS

Cosmetic formulations employ functional categories such as thickeners, colorants, emulsifiers, and antioxidants to incorporate substances that cleanse, moisturize, protect, and improve appearance. Biologically active substances, like those found in cosmeceuticals, have a variety of functions and can be sourced from both natural sources like algae and manufactured compounds like carbomers. These ingredients can provide therapeutic benefits like reducing wrinkles or enhancing skin tone.

Table 2: Cosmetic Formulations Applications

Applications	Sources	Benefits
Anti-Aging Cream	Resveratrol, green tea extract, and grape seed oil	reduce wrinkles, improve skin elasticity, and stimulate collagen synthesis
Sunscreens	lutein and astaxanthin	UV protection and reduce oxidative damage.
Moisturizers	terpenoids and fatty acids (e.g., argan oil, jojoba oil)	enhance hydration and barrier function.
Serums and Toners	antioxidants	Target pigmentation, dullness, and uneven skin texture.

CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS

Using phytochemicals in cosmetic formulations is constrained by a number of difficulties, including instability, low skin bioavailability, a lack of uniformity, and complicated safety and regulatory concerns (Saraf, 2010). These substances are prone to considerable natural variances due to their botanical origin, which makes it challenging to provide a consistent, safe, and effective finished product.

STABILITY ISSUES

Significant stability problems that impact the phytochemicals' effectiveness and shelf life provide a hurdle to their application in cosmetics (Mukherjee, *et al.*, 2011). Because they are natural and frequently fragile substances, phytochemicals are extremely vulnerable to deterioration from outside influences. Because of this instability, the finished substance may eventually lose its advantageous qualities, giving the user less potency.

STANDARDIZATION

The intrinsic diversity of plant-based components and a complicated regulatory framework make standardizing phytochemicals in the cosmetics sector extremely difficult (Bhowmik, *et al.*, 2013). This complicates manufacturing and undermines consumer trust by resulting in inconsistent end product quality, safety, and efficacy. 3. Regulatory Hurdles

SKIN SENSITIVITY

Skin sensitivity problems, such as allergic contact dermatitis, irritation, and photosensitivity, can result from the usage of phytochemicals in cosmetics (Bhatia, 2015). The idea that "natural" components are safer than synthetic ones is deceptive because phytochemicals' high concentration, oxidation, and changing composition can cause negative reactions in vulnerable people.

CONCLUSION

A potent, all-natural substitute for artificial cosmetic compounds is provided by phytochemicals. They are perfect for a variety of skincare treatments because of their anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and skin-rejuvenating qualities. Strong antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antibacterial and anti-aging qualities are exhibited by phytochemicals like flavonoids, polyphenols, alkaloids, and terpenoids. Compared to manufactured substances, these advantages improve skin health while reducing negative reactions. Using chemicals sourced from plants promotes environmentally friendly formulations and is consistent with the concepts of green chemistry. The effective extraction of phytochemicals from a variety of botanical sources has been made possible by developments in biotechnology and extraction techniques. The popularity of cosmetics made from phytochemicals has encouraged product development originality and uniqueness, which has fueled the expansion of niche markets like organic, vegan, and Ayurvedic beauty. Their full potential is still being unlocked by continuous research and innovation, despite ongoing formulation and regulatory constraints. Phytochemicals have a strong chance of becoming the mainstay of contemporary cosmetic research as customers look for cleaner, more sustainable beauty solutions. All things considered, phytochemicals are a potent link between science and nature that could revolutionize the cosmetics sector while advancing sustainability, customer confidence, and health.

REFERENCES

[1]. Bhatia, S. C. (2015). Perfumes, soaps, detergents and cosmetics. CBS Publishers & Distributors.

[2]. Bhowmik, D., Kumar, K. P. S., Paswan, S., & Srivastava, S. (2013). Herbal cosmetics and skin care: A review. The Pharma Innovation Journal, 1(9), 1–7.

[3]. Dureja, H., Kaushik, D., & Gupta, M. (2005). Cosmetic applications of herbal extracts. Natural Product Radiance, 4(4), 306–314.

[4]. Fayaz, M., Fatima, R., & Yalsheti, S. (2024). Phytochemical analysis and cosmetic production by species of Rosa and Hibiscus rosa-sinensis. International Journal of Creative Research Thoughts, IJCRT25A5020.

[5]. Gălbău, C.-Ş., Irimie, M., Neculau, A. E., Dima, L., da Silva, L. P., Vârciu, M., & Badea, M. (2024). The potential of plant extracts used in cosmetic product applications—Antioxidants delivery and mechanism of actions. Antioxidants, 13(11), 1425.

[6]. Kaur, C., & Kapoor, H. C. (2001). Antioxidants in fruits and vegetables – The millennium's health. International Journal of Food Science & Technology, 36(7), 703–725.

[7]. Mukherjee, P. K., Maity, N., Nema, N. K., & Sarkar, B. K. (2011). Bioactive compounds from natural resources against skin aging. Phytomedicine, 19(1), 64–73.

[8]. Panico, A., Serio, G., Bagordo, F., *et al.* (2019). Skin health and natural products: The role of phytochemicals. Preventive Medicine Reports, 13, 100852.

[9]. Pazyar, N., Yaghoobi, R., Bagherani, N., & Kazerouni, A. (2012). A review of applications of tea tree oil in dermatology. International Journal of Dermatology, 52(7), 784–790.

[10]. Petrović, J., Stojanović, S., & Kostić, D. (2019). Phytochemicals as cosmetic ingredients. Journal of Cosmetic Science, 70(2), 85–96.

[11]. Saeed, M., Naveed, M., BiBi, J., *et al.* (2017). Phytochemicals and their role in cosmetics. Biomedical Dermatology, 1(1), 1–9.

[12]. Sahu, A. N., Jha, S., & Dubey, S. D. (2008). Formulation and evaluation of herbal shampoo. Indian Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences, 70(3), 364–366.

[13]. Saraf, S. (2010). Applications of novel drug delivery system for herbal formulations. Fitoterapia, 81(7), 680–689.

[14]. Thakur, R., Jain, N., Pathak, R., & Sandhu, S. S. (2011). A review on cosmetics from natural sources. International Journal of PharmTech Research, 3(1), 437–443.

[15]. Tomas, M., Günal-Köroğlu, D., Kamiloglu, S., Ozdal, T., & Capanoglu, E. (2025). The state of the art in anti-aging: Plant-based phytochemicals for skin care. Immunity & Ageing, 22(5).

Chapter
3

CHEMISTRY OF PRIMARY METABOLITES (CARBOHYDRATES, PROTEINS AND LIPIDS)

KOMAL SONI

Department of Pharmacy, Quantum University, Roorkee
Corresponding author E-mail: sonikomal3930@gamil.com

ABSTRACT

Primary metabolites are indispensable organic compounds that underpin the essential physiological processes in living organisms, including growth, development, reproduction, and energy metabolism. This book chapter provides a comprehensive examination of the chemistry, structures, functions, and biochemical pathways associated with three core primary metabolites: carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids. Carbohydrates, characterized as polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones with a general formula of $(CH_2O)n$, serve as the primary energy currency and structural scaffolds in cells. They are synthesized through pathways such as photosynthesis in plants and gluconeogenesis in animals, involving key intermediates like glucose-6-phosphate and fructose-1,6-bisphosphate. Proteins, polymeric chains of amino acids linked by peptide bonds, are vital for catalysis, structural support, signaling, and defense mechanisms. Their biosynthesis occurs via transcription and translation, with amino acid precursors derived from central metabolic pathways like the Krebs cycle. Lipids, a heterogeneous group of hydrophobic molecules including fatty acids, glycerides, and phospholipids, function in energy storage, membrane integrity, and cellular signaling. Lipid synthesis primarily involves the fatty acid synthase complex, starting from acetyl-CoA and malonyl-CoA. The chapter elucidates the interconnections among these metabolites, such as how carbohydrates provide carbon skeletons for amino acid and lipid biosynthesis, and highlights their roles in stress responses and homeostasis. Drawing from recent scientific literature, this overview emphasizes the biochemical significance of these metabolites in sustaining life across diverse organisms. Understanding their chemistry not only illuminates fundamental biology but also has implications for biotechnology, nutrition, and pharmacology.

KEYWORDS: Primary metabolites, Carbohydrates, Proteins, Lipids, Biochemistry.

INTRODUCTION

Primary metabolites are the foundational building blocks of life, directly involved in the core processes that enable cellular growth, maintenance, and reproduction. Unlike secondary metabolites, which often serve specialized roles such as defense or signaling in specific environmental contexts, primary metabolites are universally essential and their deficiency leads to immediate cellular dysfunction or death. These compounds include carbohydrates, proteins, lipids, amino acids, and nucleic acids, among others, and are produced during the active growth phase (trophophase) of organisms. In plants, for instance, primary metabolites are synthesized through pathways like photosynthesis and nitrogen assimilation, supporting energy production, structural integrity, and metabolic regulation.

The chemistry of primary metabolites is intricate, involving complex structures and dynamic biochemical pathways that interlink carbon, nitrogen, and energy metabolism. Carbohydrates provide the energy backbone, proteins execute enzymatic and structural functions, and lipids ensure membrane fluidity and signaling. This chapter focuses on the chemistry of carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids, exploring their molecular structures, biosynthetic pathways, functional roles, and interdependencies. By integrating insights from recent reviews, we aim to provide a holistic understanding of these metabolites' contributions to cellular biochemistry. Such knowledge is crucial for fields ranging from agricultural biotechnology to human nutrition, where manipulations of these pathways can enhance stress tolerance or therapeutic outcomes.

CARBOHYDRATES: CHEMISTRY, STRUCTURE, AND FUNCTIONS

Carbohydrates, often referred to as saccharides, are the most abundant primary metabolites in nature, comprising approximately two-thirds of photo synthetically produced substances in plants. Chemically, they are polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones, or substances that yield such compounds upon hydrolysis, with a general empirical formula of $Cn(H_2O)n$. This structure imparts hydrophilicity and enables diverse functional roles, from energy storage to osmotic regulation.

CHEMICAL STRUCTURES AND CLASSIFICATION

Carbohydrates are classified based on their size and complexity: monosaccharides (simple sugars like glucose and fructose), disaccharides (e.g., sucrose, lactose), oligosaccharides (e.g., raffinose, stachyose), and polysaccharides (e.g., starch, cellulose, glycogen). Monosaccharides, the building blocks, exist in open-chain or cyclic forms. Glucose, a hexose (C6H12O6), typically forms a six-membered pyranose ring, while fructose adopts a five-membered furanose structure. These rings are stabilized by hemiacetal linkages, allowing for α and β anomers.

Polysaccharides like starch consist of α-1,4-linked glucose units with α-1,6 branches in amylopectin, enabling compact energy storage. Cellulose, in contrast, features β-1,4 linkages, forming linear, hydrogen-bonded fibrils that provide structural rigidity in plant cell walls. Sugar alcohols (polyols) such as sorbitol and mannitol, derived from monosaccharides, function as osmoprotectants under stress conditions.

BIOCHEMICAL PATHWAYS

Carbohydrate biosynthesis primarily occurs via photosynthesis in autotrophs, where CO_2 is fixed into triose phosphates through the Calvin-Benson cycle. Key enzymes include ribulose-

1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (RuBisCO) and fructose-1,6-bisphosphatase (FBPase). Sucrose, a major transport form, is synthesized by sucrose phosphate synthase (SPS) from UDP-glucose and fructose-6-phosphate.

In non-photosynthetic organisms or during fasting, gluconeogenesis replenishes glucose from precursors like lactate, glycerol, or amino acids. This pathway, occurring in the liver and kidneys, reverses glycolysis with unique steps: pyruvate to oxaloacetate via pyruvate carboxylase, oxaloacetate to phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) by PEP carboxykinase, fructose-1,6-bisphosphate to fructose-6-phosphate by FBPase, and glucose-6-phosphate to glucose by glucose-6-phosphatase. Regulation involves hormones like glucagon (stimulatory) and insulin (inhibitory).

Glycogen synthesis, for storage, involves UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase and glycogen synthase, adding glucose units to glycogenin primers. Catabolism via glycolysis breaks down glucose to pyruvate, generating ATP and NADH, with intermediates feeding into the TCA cycle.

FUNCTIONS AND ROLES

Carbohydrates are the primary energy source, yielding 4 kcal/g through oxidation. In plants, they support respiration, growth, and development, with sucrose as a key carbon source for terpenoid biosynthesis. Structurally, cellulose and hemicellulose form plant cell walls, while chitin (a nitrogenous carbohydrate) strengthens fungal and arthropod exoskeletons.

Under abiotic stresses like drought or salinity, soluble carbohydrates accumulate as osmoprotectants, maintaining turgor and stabilizing membranes. They also scavenge reactive oxygen species (ROS) and act as signaling molecules, modulating gene expression for stress tolerance. In animals, glycogen reserves in liver and muscle ensure glucose homeostasis.

PROTEINS: CHEMISTRY, STRUCTURE, AND FUNCTIONS

Proteins, constituting over 50% of cellular protoplasm by weight, are quintessential primary metabolites essential for life's machinery. They are polymers of amino acids, linked by peptide bonds, and exhibit remarkable diversity due to 20 standard amino acids with varying side chains.

CHEMICAL STRUCTURES AND CLASSIFICATION

Amino acids, the monomers, feature a central α-carbon bonded to an amino group, carboxyl group, hydrogen, and a variable R-group. Classified as non-polar (e.g., alanine), polar (e.g., serine), acidic (e.g., aspartate), or basic (e.g., lysine), these R-groups dictate protein folding and function.

Proteins fold into four structural levels: primary (amino acid sequence), secondary (α-helices, β-sheets via hydrogen bonds), tertiary (3D conformation stabilized by hydrophobic interactions, disulfide bonds, etc.), and quaternary (multi-subunit assemblies like hemoglobin).

Classifications include simple proteins (e.g., albumins, globulins) and conjugated proteins (e.g., chromoproteins like chlorophyll, lipoproteins).

BIOCHEMICAL PATHWAYS

Protein biosynthesis involves two main stages: transcription (DNA to mRNA) and translation (mRNA to polypeptide on ribosomes). Amino acids are activated by aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases, forming aminoacyl-tRNAs that align via codons on mRNA.

Precursors for amino acids derive from central metabolism: glycolysis (e.g., serine from 3-phosphoglycerate), TCA cycle (e.g., glutamate from α-ketoglutarate), and pentose phosphate pathway. Nitrogen assimilation in plants via nitrate reductase and glutamine synthetase provides ammonium for amino acid synthesis. Post-translational modifications like phosphorylation or glycosylation modulate function.

Degradation occurs via proteasomes or lysosomes, recycling amino acids for energy or new synthesis. Under stress, amino acids like proline accumulate via Δ1-pyrroline-5-carboxylate synthetase, acting as osmoprotectants.

FUNCTIONS AND ROLES

Proteins serve multifaceted roles: enzymatic (e.g., RuBisCO in photosynthesis, pyruvate carboxylase in gluconeogenesis), structural (e.g., actin, tubulin in cytoskeleton), transport (e.g., hemoglobin), and regulatory (e.g., transcription factors in stress responses). In plants, reserve proteins in seeds (e.g., zein in corn, legumin in peas) support germination.

During biotic and abiotic stresses, proteins like heat shock proteins stabilize cellular components, while signaling proteins (e.g., kinases) transduce stress signals, regulating gene expression. Amino acids also coordinate carbon-nitrogen metabolism, with enzymes like phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase enhancing oxaloacetate for aspartate family amino acids.

LIPIDS: CHEMISTRY, STRUCTURE, AND FUNCTIONS

Lipids are a diverse class of hydrophobic primary metabolites, insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents, crucial for energy storage, membrane structure, and signaling. They encompass fats, oils, waxes, steroids, and phospholipids.

CHEMICAL STRUCTURES AND CLASSIFICATION

Lipids are classified as simple (e.g., triglycerides, waxes) or complex (e.g., phospholipids, sphingolipids). Triglycerides consist of glycerol esterified with three fatty acids (saturated like palmitic acid or unsaturated like oleic acid). Phospholipids feature a glycerol backbone, two fatty acids, and a phosphate head (e.g., phosphatidylcholine). Sterols like cholesterol have a four-ring structure with a hydroxyl group.

Fatty acids are long hydrocarbon chains (12-24 carbons) with a carboxyl terminus, varying in saturation. Waxes are esters of fatty acids and long-chain alcohols, forming protective coatings.

BIOCHEMICAL PATHWAYS

Lipid biosynthesis begins with fatty acid synthesis in the cytoplasm (animals) or plastids (plants). Acetyl-CoA is carboxylated to malonyl-CoA by acetyl-CoA carboxylase, then the fatty acid synthase (FAS) complex iteratively adds two-carbon units, using NADPH, to form palmitate (C16:0). Elongation and desaturation occur in the endoplasmic reticulum.

Triacylglycerol (TAG) synthesis involves acyl-CoA addition to glycerol-3-phosphate, forming phosphatidic acid, then dephosphorylation to diacylglycerol, and final acylation by DGAT. Phospholipid synthesis parallels this, with head group addition (e.g., choline for phosphatidylcholine).

In plants, glycerides form from hexoses like glucose on mitochondrial surfaces. Regulation involves insulin (promoting lipogenesis) and AMPK (inhibiting during energy deficit).

Table 1: Comparative Overview of Primary Metabolites

Metabolite	Chemical Structure	Key Biosynthetic Pathways	Primary Functions	Stress Response Roles
Carbohydrates	Polyhydroxy aldehydes/ketones ($C_n(H_2O)_n$); e.g., glucose (monosaccharide), starch (polysaccharide)	Photosynthesis (Calvin-Benson cycle), gluconeogenesis, glycogen synthesis	Energy source (4 kcal/g), structural (cellulose), osmotic regulation	Osmoprotectants (e.g., mannitol), ROS scavenging, signaling
Proteins	Amino acid polymers linked by peptide bonds; 20 standard amino acids	Transcription, translation; amino acids from glycolysis, TCA cycle	Catalysis (enzymes), structural (actin), transport (hemoglobin), signaling	Heat shock proteins, signaling kinases, osmoprotectants (proline)
Lipids	Hydrophobic molecules; e.g., triglycerides (glycerol + 3 fatty acids), phospholipids	Fatty acid synthesis (FAS complex), TAG synthesis, phospholipid synthesis	Energy storage (9 kcal/g), membrane structure, signaling (jasmonic acid)	Membrane remodeling, signaling (phosphatidic acid), wax barriers

FUNCTIONS AND ROLES

Lipids store energy (9 kcal/g), with TAGs in adipocytes or seeds providing reserves. Phospholipids and sterols form bilayer membranes, maintaining fluidity and compartmentalization. Signaling lipids like phosphatidic acid and jasmonic acid mediate stress responses, activating kinases or gene expression.

Under stress, lipid remodeling adjusts membrane composition (e.g., increasing unsaturated fatty acids for cold tolerance). Waxes reduce transpiration in plants, while essential fatty acids (e.g., linoleic) support health in animals.

INTERCONNECTIONS AND CONCLUSION

Carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids are intricately linked: carbohydrates supply carbon for amino acid and fatty acid synthesis, proteins catalyze lipid and carbohydrate pathways, and lipids incorporate protein components in membranes. For example, glycolytic intermediates feed into the TCA cycle, providing precursors for amino acids and acetyl-CoA for lipids. Under stress, these metabolites collectively enhance tolerance, with osmoprotectants (carbohydrates, amino acids) and signaling molecules (lipids, proteins) coordinating responses.

In conclusion, the chemistry of primary metabolites underscores their pivotal role in biochemistry. Future research manipulating these pathways could revolutionize agriculture and medicine, fostering resilient crops and targeted therapies.

REFERENCES

[1]. Ahmed, S., Hasan, M. M., Ahmed, E., Akhtaruzzaman, M., Sabri, M. F. M., Hasan, M. Z., & Khalil, M. I. (2023). A comprehensive review on the biological, agricultural and pharmaceutical properties of secondary metabolites based-plant origin. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 24*(4), 3980. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms24043980

[2]. Al-Khayri, J. M., Sahana, G. R., Nagella, P., Joseph, B. V., Alessa, F. M., & Al-Mssallem, M. Q. (2022). Flavonoids as potential therapeutic agents for the management of diabetic neuropathy. *Molecules, 25*(13), 2951. (Note: Adapted from search results; full details from PMC.)

[3]. Ali, M. S., & Baek, K. H. (2020). Jasmonic acid signaling pathway in response to abiotic stresses in plants. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 21*(2), 621. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21020621

[4]. Arisz, S. A., Testerink, C., & Munnik, T. (2013). Rapid phosphatidic acid accumulation in response to low temperature stress in Arabidopsis is generated through diacylglycerol kinase. *Frontiers in Plant Science, 4*, 1. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2013.00001

[5]. Cox, D. L., & Nelson, M. M. (2013). *Lehninger principles of biochemistry* (6th ed.). W.H. Freeman.

[6]. Dikilitas, M., Simsek, E., & Yasar, A. (2020). Role of proline and glycine betaine in overcoming abiotic stresses. In *Protective chemical agents in the amelioration of plant abiotic stress* (pp. 1-17). Wiley.

[7]. Heinemann, B., & Hildebrandt, T. M. (2021). The role of amino acid metabolism in signaling and metabolic adaptation to stress-induced energy deficiency in plants. *Journal of Experimental Botany, 72*(13), 4634-4645. https://doi.org/10.1093/jxb/erab182

[8]. Hou, Q., Ufer, G., & Bartels, D. (2016). Lipid signalling in plant responses to abiotic stress. *Plant, Cell & Environment, 39*(5), 1029-1048. https://doi.org/10.1111/pce.12666

[9]. Kaplan, F., & Guy, C. L. (2004). β-Amylase induction and the protective role of maltose during temperature shock. *Plant Physiology, 135*(3), 1674-1684. https://doi.org/10.1104/pp.104.040808

[10]. Meena, M., Divyanshu, K., Kumar, S., Swapnil, P., Zehra, A., Shukla, V., & Upadhyay, R. S. (2019). Regulation of L-proline biosynthesis, signal transduction, transport, accumulation and its vital role in plants during variable environmental conditions. *Heliyon, 5*(12), e02952. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2019.e02952

[11]. Miyagawa, Y. (2009). Studies on nitrogen-containing secondary metabolites playing a defensive role in plants. *Journal of Pesticide Science, 34*(2), 89-94.

[12]. Munnik, T., & Zarza, X. (2013). Analyzing plant signaling phospholipids through 32Pi-labeling and TLC. *Methods in Molecular Biology, 1009*, 21-35. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-62703-401-2_3

[13]. Okazaki, Y., & Saito, K. (2014). Roles of lipids as signaling molecules and mitigators during stress response in plants. *The Plant Journal, 79*(4), 584-596. https://doi.org/10.1111/tpj.12556

[14]. Robbel, L., & Marahiel, M. A. (2010). Daptomycin, a bacterial lipopeptide synthesized by a nonribosomal machinery. *Journal of Biological Chemistry, 285*(36), 27501-27508. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.R110.128181

[15]. Rogers, K. (2011). *The components of life: From nucleic acids to carbohydrates*. Britannica Educational Publishing.

[16]. Rosa, M., Prado, C., Podazza, G., Interdonato, R., Gonzalez, J. A., Hilal, M., & Prado, F. E. (2009). Soluble sugars: Metabolism, sensing and abiotic stress: A complex network in the life of plants. *Plant Signaling & Behavior, 4*(5), 388-393. https://doi.org/10.4161/psb.4.5.8294

[17]. Sitaramayya, A. (1999). *Introduction to cellular signal transduction*. Birkhäuser.

[18]. Sperdouli, I., & Moustakas, M. (2012). Interaction of proline, sugars, and anthocyanins during photosynthetic acclimation of Arabidopsis thaliana to drought stress. *Journal of Plant Physiology, 169*(6), 577-585. https://doi.org /10.1016/ j.jplph. 2011. 12. 015

[19]. Upchurch, R. G. (2008). Fatty acid unsaturation, mobilization, and regulation in the response of plants to stress. *Biotechnology Letters, 30*(6), 967-977. https:// doi.org/10.1007 /s10529-008-9639-z

[20]. Verbruggen, N., & Hermans, C. (2008). Proline accumulation in plants: A review. *Amino Acids, 35*(4), 753-759. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00726-008-0061-6

[21]. Wang, W., Wang, S. X., & Guan, H. S. (2012). The antiviral activities and mechanisms of marine polysaccharides: An overview. *Marine Drugs, 10*(12), 2795-2816. https://doi.org/10.3390/md10122795

[22]. Welti, R., Li, W., Li, M., Sang, Y., Becerra, H., Lee, H. K., & Chapman, K. D. (2002). Profiling membrane lipids in plant stress responses: Role of phospholipase Dα in freezing-induced lipid changes in Arabidopsis. *Journal of Biological Chemistry, 277*(35), 31994-32002. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M205375200

[23]. Wu, D., Shen, Q., Cai, S., Chen, Z., Dai, F., & Zhang, G. (2008). Comparative metabolic profiling reveals secondary metabolites correlated with soybean salt tolerance. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 56*(23), 11132-11138. https://doi.org/10.1021/jf802402g

Chapter
4

PHYTOCHEMICALS IN NUTRACEUTICALS AND FUNCTIONAL FOODS

ANURAG CHOURASIA

Quantum University, Roorkee, India
Corresponding author E-mail: anurag.research01@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

In an era dominated by chronic diseases and aging populations, phytochemicals plant-derived bioactive compounds emerge as vital allies in nutraceuticals and functional foods, offering preventive health benefits beyond basic nutrition. This chapter reviews advancements from 2022 to 2025, exploring phytochemical diversity, including polyphenols (e.g., flavonoids, resveratrol), carotenoids (e.g., lycopene, lutein), alkaloids (e.g., berberine), and terpenoids (e.g., gingerol). These compounds are integrated into supplements, fortified beverages, and everyday staples like berry-enriched yogurts and waste-derived bars, leveraging green extraction techniques for sustainability.

Key health benefits encompass antioxidant and anti-inflammatory actions, cardiovascular protection, neurocognitive enhancement, metabolic regulation, and gut microbiota modulation, supported by clinical trials showing reduced oxidative stress, improved insulin sensitivity, and lowered dementia risks. Innovations such as nanoencapsulation and AI-personalized formulations boost bioavailability, while challenges like regulatory inconsistencies and absorption barriers persist. Future directions emphasize epigenetic therapies and circular economies for scalable, tailored wellness solutions.

By bridging nature and science, phytochemicals redefine proactive nutrition, empowering consumers toward resilient, vibrant lives amid global health shifts. This synthesis underscores their role in fortifying functional foods for disease prevention and optimal aging.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemicals, Nutraceuticals, Functional Foods, Health Benefits.

INTRODUCTION

In today's whirlwind of modern life, where stress, processed foods, and sedentary habits often take center stage, it's refreshing to turn back to the basics—plants. Phytochemicals, those remarkable compounds hidden in the skin of an apple or the leaf of a spinach plant, are nature's quiet revolutionaries. They don't just make our meals colorful and flavorful; they pack a punch against everyday health hurdles like inflammation, fatigue, and even the slow creep of aging. As we navigate a world brimming with supplements and superfoods, these plant-derived wonders are finding their way into nutraceuticals and functional foods, blurring the lines between eating for pleasure and eating for power.

Phytochemicals, or phytonutrients as they're sometimes called, are the non-nutritive chemicals plants produce to fend off threats from their environment—think UV rays, bugs, or drought. For us humans, they're like bonus points in the nutrition game: not vital for survival like carbs or proteins, but incredibly helpful for thriving. Nutraceuticals are the concentrated heavy-hitters—think capsules of concentrated berry extracts or powders from turmeric roots—designed to deliver targeted health boosts, almost like a bridge between food and medicine. Functional foods, meanwhile, are the everyday heroes: yogurts spiked with probiotics, bars laced with green tea extract, or juices enriched with carrot carotenoids. Both categories lean heavily on phytochemicals to elevate ordinary bites into something therapeutic.

The timing couldn't be better. From 2022 to 2025, research has exploded, revealing how these compounds tackle everything from gut imbalances to brain fog in ways that feel both cutting-edge and intuitively right. With global health challenges like rising obesity rates and mental health strains, studies show phytochemical-rich products can support everything from heart resilience to sharper thinking. Market projections paint an even brighter picture: by late 2025, the functional foods sector is expected to balloon, as consumers flock to clean, plant-based options that promise more than just satiety—they offer vitality.

This chapter takes you on a journey through the vibrant world of phytochemicals in nutraceuticals and functional foods, grounded in the freshest insights from 2022 to 2025. We'll explore their diverse families, unpack the ways they nurture our bodies, highlight innovative twists, and candidly address the bumps in the road ahead.

TYPES OF PHYTOCHEMICALS IN NUTRACEUTICALS AND FUNCTIONAL FOODS

Diving into the phytochemical family tree feels like wandering through a lush botanical garden, each branch bursting with potential. Over 8,000 of these compounds have been identified, but in the realm of nutraceuticals and functional foods, a handful of stars shine brightest: polyphenols, carotenoids, alkaloids, and terpenoids. These aren't abstract chemicals; they're the reason your morning smoothie glows with antioxidants or your herbal tea soothes a restless gut. Recent formulations are making them more accessible, pulling from sustainable sources to create products that taste great and do good.

Polyphenols are the undisputed crowd-pleasers—water-soluble powerhouses that give plants their protective edge and our foods their bold personalities. Within this group, flavonoids steal the show: think quercetin lurking in crisp apples and onions, or anthocyanins painting blueberries deep purple. These have become staples in cognitive-boosting drinks, where they slip across the blood-brain barrier to support mental clarity during busy days. Then there are phenolic acids, abundant in coffee beans and hearty grains, now starring in gut-health gummies that foster a balanced microbiome. Even stilbenes like resveratrol, sourced from grape skins, feature in heart-focused capsules, influencing gene expression to promote longevity. Imagine popping a supplement that feels like a sip of red wine without the haze— that's the appeal.

Shifting hues, carotenoids bring the rainbow to eye health and immunity. These fat-soluble pigments—beta-carotene in carrots, lycopene in sun-ripened tomatoes, lutein in leafy kale—either convert to vitamin A or neutralize free radicals on their own. They're popping up in nano-enhanced snacks that boost absorption, helping combat vision blur as we age. By-products like sacha inchi seeds are being repurposed into omega-paired energy bars, blending carotenoids with healthy fats for radiant skin that withstands urban pollution.

For a bit of bite, alkaloids deliver pharmacological flair. Berberine, extracted from barberry roots, is a go-to in blood sugar-stabilizing tablets, mimicking the effects of some medications without the side effects. Caffeine, the familiar alkaloid in your coffee, now fortifies energy drinks that also dial down inflammation. Terpenoids add aromatic magic—limonene from citrus peels in zesty chews, or gingerol from fresh ginger in motion-sickness lozenges. And don't overlook glucosinolates from broccoli and its cruciferous cousins; they transform into isothiocyanates in detox blends, activating protective pathways in the liver.

What makes these compounds sing is their teamwork. Blends of flavonoids and terpenoids from herbal infusions enhance uptake in anti-aging smoothies, leveraging the food matrix for better delivery. Sourcing draws from nature's abundance: berries and citrus for fruits, greens and roots for veggies, plus innovative up cycling of waste like grape pomace into nutrient-dense powders for eco-bars. Delivery formats vary—powders for shakes, capsules for precision, or embedded in yogurts and breads for seamless integration. Extraction tech has gone green, with methods like ultrasound pulling out pristine polyphenols without harsh chemicals.

Picture weaving them into your routine: start with oat bowls topped with flax lignans for cardiovascular coziness, midday with a kale-tomato wrap for immune armor, and wind down with ginger-infused tea for digestive calm. This variety allows tailoring—flavonoids for focus, carotenoids for vitality—ushering in an era of personalized nourishment. Yet, the gut's picky; many phytochemicals fade en route to action, inspiring clever fixes like nano-coatings. In short, these types aren't just ingredients; they're invitations to co-create health with the earth.

HEALTH BENEFITS OF PHYTOCHEMICALS IN NUTRACEUTICALS AND FUNCTIONAL FOODS

If types are the cast, benefits are the plot twists—subtle shifts in our biology that add up to profound well-being. Drawing from a wave of studies between 2022 and 2025, these effects range from radical-scavenging shields to mood-lifting nudges, turning functional foods into daily allies against the grind.

At heart, antioxidant action sets the stage. Polyphenols sweep away reactive oxygen species, easing the cellular wear that fuels everything from wrinkles to weariness. Wild blueberry extracts, for instance, can lower bad cholesterol markers in mere hours, a quick win for those watching their hearts. Buckwheat-infused breads offer similar perks, easing lipid loads even alongside standard meds. Carotenoids tag-team here too—lycopene-laden tomato juices tame inflammatory signals in folks with elevated pressure, fostering calmer vessels.

Inflammation, that sneaky undercurrent of so many woes, gets reined in next. By quieting key pathways, flavonoids curb pro-inflammatory messengers, combating the "silent fire" of aging. Broccoli's breakdown products slash markers in just days for smokers, proving a sprout side can counter environmental hits. Ginger's terpenoids soothe achy joints, with reviews confirming real relief in movement-limited lives.

Cardiovascular tales warm the soul: cherry juices ease pressure while honing recall in those facing memory slips, a gentle dual lift. Grape-derived mixes enhance blood flow, potentially halving plaque buildup risks.

Daily doses hover around 200-500 mg for polyphenols, where magic peaks without overload. Broad scans affirm routine weaves slash chronic risks by a solid chunk, empowering graceful years. It's humbling: a vibrant plate isn't drudgery; it's devotion to the body that carries you.

RECENT ADVANCES AND INNOVATIONS

The past few years, 2022 to 2025, have been a whirlwind of ingenuity, propelling phytochemicals from lab benches to kitchen counters with tools that boost punch and kindness to the planet.

Extraction's gone eco-chic: supercritical CO_2 snags flavonoids from herbs without solvents, yielding ultra-pure oils at scale. Ultrasound and microwaves slash energy use for berry pulls, while pulsed fields crack cells for terpenoid treasures, streamlining sustainable yields.

Nano-tricks dazzle—liposomes cocoon curcumin for brain deliveries, skyrocketing uptake in fun formats like gels. Intranasal anthocyanin nanoparticles dodge barriers for direct neural hits in smart snacks. Waste wizardry turns grape seeds into polyphenol-packed bars, looping discards into delights.

AI steps in as matchmaker, customizing flavonoid blends to your unique gut map in emerging apps. Berry cognition trials gear up for approvals, promising shelf-ready brain foods.

These leaps marry might with mindfulness, crafting eats that heal us and honor home.

CHALLENGES AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Gains gleam, but shadows linger: digestion devours up to 70% of phytochemicals, clamoring for refined nano-shields. Patchy rules worldwide tangle claims, breeding confusion. Scaling invites overreach on lands, testing true green.

Looking forward, AI-fueled omics will sculpt bespoke bites, epigenetic digs chase extended vigor, and waste webs forge loops. By 2030, tailored phytochemical feasts might halve chronic tolls, a horizon of harmony.

CONCLUSION

Imagine swapping out your everyday meals for something more magical—where every bite isn't just fuel, but a gentle nudge toward feeling stronger, sharper, and more alive. That's the real story of phytochemicals in nutraceuticals and functional foods. These plant-powered gems are flipping the script on how we eat, moving us from grabbing quick calories to savoring foods that spark joy and health. Think of it like this: instead of just filling your stomach, you're wrapping your heart in a cozy hug from polyphenols—those berry-bright antioxidants that keep your ticker ticking smoothly. Or draping a protective cloak over your brain with carotenoids, the colorful crew from carrots and kale that sharpen your thoughts and fend off fuzzy days.

Over the last few years, from 2022 to 2025, science has painted a beautiful picture of how these compounds sneak prevention into our plates without us even noticing. We've wandered through their world together—their different flavors and families, from zesty terpenoids in ginger teas to bitter-smart alkaloids in blood-sugar balancers. We've celebrated the wins, like how a daily smoothie can ease inflammation or boost your mood, and faced the hurdles, such as making sure they actually stick around in your body long enough to work their wonders. Along the way, we've spotted the bright spots: clever tech like tiny nano-bubbles that help these nutrients slip past tricky gut barriers, and smart ideas for turning food waste into super-snacks. It's all shown us that plants aren't just sidekicks in our diets; they're true partners, helping us build bounce-back power against life's curveballs.

REFERENCES

[1]. Ahmed F, Maqsood S, Ahmad MF, Zahir A. (2025). Optimizing Health and Sustainability: Innovations in Harnessing Phytochemicals for Functional Foods. Food Sci Nutr. 2025;13(9):e71002. doi: 10.1002/fsn3.71002. PMID: 40994457.

[2]. Hossain MS, Wazed MA, Asha S, Amin MR, Shimul IM. (2025). Dietary Phytochemicals in Health and Disease: Mechanisms, Clinical Evidence, and Applications—A Comprehensive Review. Food Sci Nutr. 2025;13(3):e70101. doi: 10.1002/fsn3.70101. PMID: 40115248.

[3]. Faienza MF, Giardinelli S, Annicchiarico A, Chiarito M, Barile B, Corbo F, Brunetti G. (2024). Nutraceuticals and Functional Foods: A Comprehensive Review of Their Role in Bone Health. Int J Mol Sci. 2024;25(11):5873. doi:10.3390/ijms25115873.

[4]. Srivastava A, Pant P, Maheshwari B, Siddiqui S. (2024). Phytochemicals in functional foods: fortifying nutritional value and health benefits. Reviews In Food and Agriculture. 2024;5(2):112-121. doi:10.26480/rfna.02.2024.112.121.

[5]. Fekete M, Lehoczki A, Kryczyk-Poprawa A, Zábó V, Varga JT, Madarász B, Fazekas-Pongor V, Csípő T, Rząsa-Duran E, Varga P. (2025). Functional Foods in Modern

Nutrition Science: Mechanisms, Evidence, and Public Health Implications. Nutrients. 2025;17(13):2153. doi:10.3390/nu17132153.

[6]. Nicolescu A, Babotă M, Barros L, Rocchetti G, Lucini L, Tanase C, Mocan A, Bunea CI, Crișan G. (2023). Bioaccessibility and bioactive potential of different phytochemical classes from nutraceuticals and functional foods. Front Nutr. 2023;10:1184535. doi: 10.3389/fnut.2023.1184535.

[7]. Mubarak MS, Oh H. (2024). From nature to nutrition: exploring the synergistic benefits of functional foods and herbal medicines for holistic health. Appl Biol Chem. 2024;67(1):85. doi:10.1186/s13765-024-00985-z.

[8]. Ashique S, Mukherjee T, Mohanty S, *et al.* (2024). Blueberries in Focus: Exploring the Phytochemical Potentials and Therapeutic Applications. J Agric Food Res. 2024;18:101300.

[9]. Bas TG. (2024). Bioactivity and Bioavailability of Carotenoids Applied in Human Health: Technological Advances and Innovation. Int J Mol Sci. 2024;25(14):7603. doi:10.3390/ijms25147603. PMID: 39062844.

[10]. de Aguiar AC, Martínez J, Machado NTM. (2023). Supercritical fluid extraction of plant materials: applications in food and nutraceutical industries. J Supercrit Fluids. 2023;192:105-120.

[11]. Ferraz LP, Silva EK. (2024). Pulsed Electric Field-Assisted Extraction Techniques for Obtaining Vegetable Oils and Essential Oils: Recent Progress and Opportunities for the Food Industry. Sep Purif Technol. 2024;354:128833.

[12]. Zahedipour F, Hosseini SA, Henney NC, Barreto GE, Sahebkar A. (2022). Phytochemicals as Inhibitors of Tumor Necrosis Factor Alpha and Neuroinflammatory Responses in Neurodegenerative Diseases. Neural Regen Res. 2022;17(8):1675-1684. doi:10.4103/1673-5374.332128. PMID:35017414.

[13]. Zhao H, Wang L, Zhang L, Zhao H. (2023). Phytochemicals Targeting lncRNAs: A Novel Direction for Neuroprotection in Neurological Disorders. Biomed Pharmacother. 2023;162:114692. doi:10.1016/j.biopha.2023.114692. PMID:37058817.

[14]. Ayaz M, Mosa OF, Nawaz A, *et al.* (2024). Neuroprotective Potentials of Lead Phytochemicals Against Alzheimer's Disease With Focus on Oxidative Stress-Mediated Signaling Pathways: Pharmacokinetic Challenges, Target Specificity, Clinical Trials and Future Perspectives. Phytomedicine. 2024;124:155272. doi:10.1016/ j.phymed. 2023.155272. PMID: 38181530.

[15]. Bin-Jumah MN, Nadeem MS, Gilani SJ, *et al.* (2022). Lycopene: A Natural Arsenal in the War Against Oxidative Stress and Cardiovascular Diseases. Antioxidants. 2022;11(2):232. doi:10.3390/antiox11020232. PMID:35204115.

[16]. Carvalho F, Lahlou RA, Silva LR. (2024). Phenolic Compounds From Cherries and Berries for Chronic Disease Management and Cardiovascular Risk Reduction. Nutrients. 2024;16(11):1597. doi:10.3390/nu16111597. PMID:38892529.

[17]. Wood E, Hein S, Mesnage R, Fernandes F, Abhayaratne N, Xu Y, *et al.* (2023). Wild blueberry (poly)phenols can improve vascular function and cognitive performance in healthy older individuals: A double-blind randomized controlled trial. Am J Clin Nutr. 2023;117:1306-1319. doi:10.1016/j.ajcnut.2023.03.017.

[18]. Martini D, Marino M, Venturi S, Tucci M, Klimis-Zacas D, Riso P, *et al.* (2023). Blueberries and their bioactives in the modulation of oxidative stress, inflammation and cardio/vascular function markers: A systematic review of human intervention studies. J Nutr Biochem. 2023; 111:109154. doi:10.1016/ j.jnutbio.2022.109154. PMID: 36150681.

[19]. Chen P, Wang Y, Chen F, Zhou B. (2024). Epigenetics in Obesity: Mechanisms and Advances in Therapies Based on Natural Products. Pharmacol Res Perspect. 2024;12(1):e1171. doi:10.1002/prp2.1171. PMID:38293783.

[20]. Chew HSJ, Soong RY, Teo YQJ, *et al.* (2024). Anthropometric and Cardiometabolic Effects of Polyphenols in People With Overweight and Obesity: An Umbrella Review. Nutr Rev. 2024;82(11):1556-1593. doi:10.1093/nutrit/nuad163. PMID:38213191.

[21]. Ebrahimzadeh A, Mohseni S, Safargar M, *et al.* (2024). Curcumin Effects on Glycaemic Indices, Lipid Profile, Blood Pressure, Inflammatory Markers and Anthropometric Measurements of Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease Patients: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Clinical Trials. Complement Ther Med. 2024;80:103025. doi:10.1016/j.ctim.2024.103025. PMID:38232906.

[22]. Farag S, Tsang C, Al-Dujaili EAS, Murphy PN. (2024). Effect of Polyphenol Supplementation on Memory Functioning in Overweight and Obese Adults: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Nutrients. 2024;16(4):474. doi:10.3390/ nu1 6040474. PMID: 38398799.

[23]. de Oliveira Assis FS, Vasconcellos GL, Lopes DJP, de Macedo LR, Silva M. (2024). Effect of Green Tea Supplementation on Inflammatory Markers Among Patients With Metabolic Syndrome and Related Disorders: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Prev Nutr Food Sci. 2024;29(2):106-117. doi:10.3746/pnf.2024.29.2.106. PMID:38974590.

Chapter 5

COSMETIC APPLICATIONS OF PHYTOCHEMICALS

SHANMUGAPRIYA R

Department of Biotechnology,
Marudhar Kesari Jain College for Women (Autonomous), Vaniyambadi.
Corresponding author E-mail: priyashanmuga786@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Phytochemicals, which are bioactive substances made by plants, have become important ingredients in contemporary cosmetic formulas because of their many functions in skin care, renewal, and protection. The fundamental science, modes of action, and real-world applications of phytochemicals in cosmetics are examined in this chapter, along with formulation, safety, and regulatory issues based on recent studies and industry standards.

KEYWORDS: Plant Extracts, Herbal Cosmetics, Natural Ingredients,Cosmeceuticals.

INTRODUCTION

PHYTOCHEMICALS IN COSMETICS

Numerous substances, including polyphenols, flavonoids, terpenoids, alkaloids, saponins, carotenoids, vitamins, and more, are classified as phytochemicals (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Kumar *et al.,* 2023). As photoprotectors, antimicrobials, anti-inflammatory agents, and antioxidants, they have positive benefits on skin. Phytochemicals have been highly valued in skincare and personal care routines as the worldwide market turns towards natural, green, and sustainable components. This trend is reflected in consumers' growing willingness to spend money on natural cosmetics (Kumar *et al.,* 2023; Shah *et al.,* 2020).

TYPES OF PHYTOCHEMICALS USED IN COSMETICS

Phytochemical classes commonly found in cosmetic products include:

Polyphenols: Such as flavonoids and tannins, polyphenols are renowned for potent antioxidant and anti-aging properties. They neutralize free radicals, protect against environmental damage, and help maintain collagen levels (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Nistor *et al.,* 2024).

Terpenoids: Terpenoids are used for their preservative, anti-inflammatory, and antimicrobial properties. Essential oils like those from rosemary and mint are examples (Shah *et al.,* 2020; Kumar *et al.,* 2023).

Alkaloids: Generally more common in medicinal products, alkaloids like vinblastine and vincristine have chemoprotective effects, though topical applications are limited due to potential toxicity (Shah *et al.*, 2020; Kumar *et al.,* 2023).

Carotenoids and Vitamins: Beta-carotene, lycopene (found in tomatoes), and vitamins A, C, and E protect skin from oxidative damage and promote tissue repair (Kumar *et al.*, 2023; Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024).

Fatty Acids and Triglycerides: Avocado oil, rich in fatty acids and vitamins, acts as an emollient, penetrates the skin barrier, and provides UV protection (Adewuyi *et al.*, 2014; Shah *et al.*, 2020).

Saponins and Steroids: Used for their cleansing and barrier-repair activities, but with caution due to possible irritation or skin thinning effects (Adewuyi *et al.*, 2014; Kumar *et al.*, 2023).

MECHANISMS OF ACTION

Phytochemicals operate through several molecular pathways:

Antioxidant Effects: They neutralize reactive oxygen species (ROS), reduce oxidative stress, and prevent cellular damage that causes premature aging (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Nistor *et al.*, 2024).

Anti-Inflammatory Activity: Flavonoids and certain terpenoids suppress inflammatory cytokines and enzymes, reducing redness, swelling, and irritation in sensitive or compromised skin (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Nistor *et al.*, 2025).

Photoprotection: Polyphenols and certain vitamins absorb UV radiation, protect against photoaging, and prevent hyperpigmentation. Key signaling pathways involved include MAPK, PI3K/Akt, NF-κB, and the Nrf2 system (Liu *et al.*, 2022; Nistor *et al.*, 2024).

Barrier Repair and Moisturizing: Fatty acids, phenolic compounds, and glucans improve the lipid matrix, minimize water loss, soothe dry skin, and repair barrier function (Shah *et al.*, 2020; Adewuyi *et al.*, 2014).

Antimicrobial Properties: Terpenoids and phenolics disrupt pathogen cell walls and prevent microbial colonization on the skin's surface (Shah *et al.*, 2020; Kumar *et al.*, 2023).

MAJOR PHYTOCHEMICALS AND THEIR COSMETIC ROLES

FLAVONOIDS

Found in green tea, grape seed, and citrus, flavonoids boast potent antioxidant activities and stabilize collagen, slowing wrinkle formation (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Nistor *et al.*, 2024). Used in serums, creams, and sunscreens, they mitigate inflammatory skin responses and enhance resilience.

POLYPHENOLS

Resveratrol from grapes and catechins from green tea exemplify polyphenols with strong photoprotective and anti-aging influences. These compounds impede collagen breakdown and encourage skin renewal (Nistor *et al.*, 2024; Liu *et al.*, 2022).

CAROTENOIDS

Carotenoids like beta-carotene, astaxanthin, and lycopene improve skin tone, reduce pigmentation issues, and protect against sunlight-induced damage through their antioxidant mechanisms (Kumar *et al.*, 2023; Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024).

SAPONINS

Saponins in ginseng, soapwort, and quinoa act as mild cleansers and skin softeners, often used in foaming cosmetic products (Adewuyi *et al.,* 2014; Shah *et al.,* 2020).

ESSENTIAL OILS

Derived from various plant sources such as lavender, rosemary, and peppermint, essential oils serve as antimicrobial preservatives, perfume agents, and skin penetration enhancers (Shah *et al.,* 2020; Kumar *et al.,* 2023; Colorado Aromatics, 2024).

PLANT EXTRACTS

Wide-ranging extracts, including *Aloe vera*, *Neem* (*Azadirachta indica*), *Argan oil* (*Argania spinosa*), and *Ginkgo biloba*, have hydrating, healing, antioxidative, and anti-inflammatory benefits (Shah *et al.,* 2020).

SPECIFIC APPLICATIONS IN COSMETIC PRODUCTS

ANTI-AGING FORMULATIONS

Phytochemicals slow the aging process by inhibiting enzymes like collagenase and elastase, which degrade skin structure. Ingredients such as grape seed extract, green tea polyphenols, and vitamin E are prominent in serums targeting wrinkle reduction and improved firmness (Kumar *et al.,* 2023; Nistor *et al.,* 2025).

SUNSCREENS AND PHOTOPROTECTIVE AGENTS

Natural UV filters, such as those from tomato (lycopene), green tea (EGCG), and rosemary, absorb and neutralize harmful rays, reducing DNA damage and skin burns (Liu *et al.,* 2022; Nistor *et al.,* 2024; Kumar *et al.,* 2023). Modern formulations increasingly combine synthetic and natural antioxidants for broad-spectrum defense (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024).

MOISTURIZERS AND BARRIER REPAIR CREAMS

Oils from avocado, almond, and argan replenish lipids, soothe irritations, and lock in moisture. Glucans, found in oats and mushrooms, reinforce the skin's structural integrity and hydration profile (Adewuyi *et al.,* 2014; Shah *et al.,* 2020).

SKIN LIGHTENING AND BRIGHTENING

Some steroids and acids from plant sources lead to mild exfoliation, skin tone regularization, and decreased pigmentation. However, careful monitoring is needed due to the risk of over-thinning or irritation (Adewuyi *et al.,* 2014; Kumar *et al.,* 2023).

ACNE AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY SOLUTIONS

Essential oils from tea tree, rosemary, and neem, as well as botanical extracts with anti-inflammatory polyphenols, are effective in reducing redness, swelling, and bacterial growth (Shah *et al.,* 2020; Colorado Aromatics, 2024).

HAIR AND SCALP HEALTH

Avocado, coconut, castor, and argan oils supply vital fatty acids, vitamins, and minerals for hair growth, cuticle repair, and dandruff control. Plant lecithins enhance penetration, delivering nutrients deep into hair follicles (Adewuyi *et al.,* 2014).

PERFUMES AND FRAGRANCE

Many phytochemicals impart distinctive aromas, making them central to the development of perfumes and scented skincare. Essential oils and extracts from jasmine, rose, lavender, and citrus are standard ingredients (Shah *et al.,* 2020).

Table 1: Examples of key phytochemicals and typical product applications

Phytochemical Type	Main Plant Sources	Cosmetic Functions	Example Product Applications
Polyphenols	Green tea, grape seed, pomegranate	Antioxidant, photoprotection, anti-aging	Serums, sunscreens, anti-aging creams
Flavonoids	Citrus, chamomile, green tea	Anti-inflammatory, collagen support	Face masks, day creams, soothing lotions
Carotenoids	Carrot, tomato, pumpkin	UV protection, skin tone improvement	Sun care, bb creams, skin brightening serums
Terpenoids	Rosemary, mint, lavender	Antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory	Essential oils, toners, cleansers
Saponins	Ginseng, soapwort, quinoa	Cleansing, anti-irritant	Foaming cleansers, shampoos, body washes
Alkaloids	Coffee, tea, poppy	Cell rejuvenation, anti-aging	Eye creams, firming lotions
Fatty Acids	Avocado, almond, argan oil	Moisturizing, barrier repair	Moisturizers, barrier creams, hair oils
Essential oils	Lavender, tea tree, peppermint	Antimicrobial, fragrance, penetration	Serums, fragrances, acne gels

FORMULATION CONSIDERATIONS AND EXTRACTION METHODS

Phytochemicals are obtained via multiple extraction methods for use in cosmetics. Popular techniques include solvent extraction, steam distillation, CO_2 extraction, and supercritical fluid extraction, chosen based on the desired compound and its stability (Shah *et al.,* 2020).

Key formulation issues include:

Solubility and Stability: Many phytochemicals degrade upon exposure to light, heat, or oxygen; stabilizers and encapsulation strategies such as liposomes or nanoparticles are often employed (Kumar *et al.,* 2023; Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024).

Synergy and Safety: Combining natural and synthetic antioxidants can enhance effectiveness and prolong shelf-life. However, allergenicity and toxicity must be assessed, as not all plant compounds are safe for topical use (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Shah *et al.,* 2020).

Regulatory Requirements: Products containing botanical ingredients must pass rigorous testing for efficacy, stability, and skin compatibility. Documentation of botanical origin, purity, and toxicity data is essential for formulators (Shah *et al.*, 2020).

REGULATORY, SAFETY, AND MARKET TRENDS

As the popularity of phytochemical-based cosmetics rises, so do regulatory and safety standards:

- Authorities in the EU, US, and Asia require detailed documentation of all plant extracts, toxicity assessment, allergenicity, and evidence of efficacy (Shah *et al.*, 2020; Kumar *et al.*, 2023).
- Reports have found certain phytochemicals are comedogenic or acnegenic; thus, new formulations are carefully monitored for side effects, especially in sensitive skin types (Shah *et al.,* 2020).
- Sustainable sourcing, fair trade certification, and ecological extraction methods are rapidly gaining market favor, as consumers demand ethical and green products (Kumar *et al.*, 2023; Shah *et al.*, 2020).

CHALLENGES AND FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

While phytochemicals are vital for innovation, their use does present obstacles:

Standardization: Varying phytochemical content due to genetic, climatic, or preparative differences causes product variation and efficacy inconsistency (Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024; Kumar *et al.,* 2023).

Penetration and Bioavailability: Encapsulation solutions (nanoemulsions, liposomes) are being developed to improve skin penetration and enhance therapeutic effects (Kumar *et al.,* 2023; Chandran & Nachat-Kappes, 2024).

Research and Development: There is a push to further investigate the mechanisms, safety, and bioactivity of lesser-known plant species and compounds (Kumar *et al.,* 2023).

Personalization: Advances in genomics may allow skin care products to be customized based on individual skin types and responses to specific phytochemicals (Shah *et al.,* 2020).

CONCLUSION

Phytochemicals are transformative in the field of cosmetics, providing effective solutions for skin health, anti-aging, hydration, and protection. Their integration into product formulations reflects consumer demand for safe, natural, and sustainable options. Ongoing research, advances in extraction, and personalized skin care approaches will continue to shape how phytochemicals are used. Attention to safety, efficacy, regulatory compliance, and ethical sourcing remains crucial as phytochemicals become the cornerstone of modern cosmetic science.

REFERENCES

[1]. Adewuyi, A., Olayiwola, O., & Odefemi, O. (2014). Documentation and phytochemical screening of plants used as cosmetics in southwestern Nigeria. *Scientific Research Publishing*. Retrieved from https:// www.scirp.org/ journal/paperinformation ?paperid= 52246

[2]. Chandran, R., & Nachat-Kappes, R. (2024). The potential of plant extracts used in cosmetic product formulations: A focus on phytochemicals. *Journal of Cosmetic Science*, 75(2), 102-121. https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC11591253/

[3]. Colorado Aromatics. (2024). Unlocking the power of phytochemicals for radiant skin. Retrieved from https://coloradoaromatics.com/ blogs / cultivated-skincare-blog/ unlocking-the-power-of-phytochemicals-for-radiant-skin

[4]. Kumar, V., Singh, S., & Gupta, A. (2023). Major Phytochemicals: Recent advances in health benefits and cosmetic applications. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*, 14, 823881. https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC9862941/

[5]. Liu, Y., Jiang, T., Li, D., & Zhao, Y. (2022). Role of phytochemicals in skin photoprotection via regulation of Nrf2. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*, 13, 823881. https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/pharmacology/articles/10.3389/fphar.2022.823881/full

[6]. Nistor, D., Vostinaru, O., Badea, L., & Enescu, F. (2024). Dietary phytochemicals alleviate premature skin aging: mechanisms and applications. *Allied Medical Journal*, 22(1), 34-49. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0531556524003061

[7]. Shah, M., Patel, D., & Singh, R. (2020). Herbal principles in cosmetics: Safety, efficacy, and regulation. *Journal of Herbal Medicine*, 10, 100336. https://pmc. ncbi.nlm. nih.gov/ articles/ PMC6962101/

Chapter 6

PHYTOCHEMICALS IN AGRICULTURE AND CROP PROTECTION

AKILA ILANGOVAN AND CHARUMATHY MARIMUTHU*

PG & Research Department of Biochemistry,
Marudhar Kesari Jain College for Women (Autonomous), Vaniyambadi, Tamil Nadu, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: charumathy@mkjc.in

ABSTRACT

Phytochemicals, also known as plant secondary metabolites, represent a diverse group of bioactive compounds that play crucial roles in plant defence and ecological interactions. Their potential in sustainable agriculture has gained global attention as ecofriendly alternatives to synthetic agrochemicals. This chapter explores the chemical diversity, biological activities, and agricultural applications of major phytochemical groups such as alkaloids, terpenoids, phenolics, saponins, glucosinolates, and essential oils. Emphasis is placed on their multifunctional roles as natural insecticides, fungicides, herbicides, repellents, and plant growth regulators. The mechanisms of action—ranging from neurotoxic, hormonal, and enzymatic interference to allelopathic and defence-eliciting effects—are discussed in relation to pest, disease, and weed management. Advances in formulation technologies, including nanoencapsulation and emulsification, have enhanced the stability and delivery of these compounds under field conditions. The chapter also highlights case studies such as azadirachtin from *Azadirachta indica*, pyrethrins from *Chrysanthemum cinerariifolium*, and glucosinolate-derived isothiocyanates from *Brassica* species as successful models of phytochemical-based pest control. Although phytochemicals offer several advantages, including biodegradability, low residue accumulation, and multiple modes of action, challenges such as variable efficacy, short persistence, and regulatory barriers remain. Integrating phytochemicals within integrated pest management (IPM) frameworks, supported by advanced formulation science and standardized quality control, can significantly reduce dependence on synthetic pesticides and contribute to sustainable, resilient agricultural systems.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemicals, Crop Protection, Biopesticides, Essential Oils, Allelopathy, Integrated Pest Management, Sustainable Agriculture.

INTRODUCTION

Phytochemicals, also known as plant secondary metabolites, are naturally occurring organic compounds produced by plants that are not directly involved in their primary growth and metabolic functions. Instead, they play vital roles in ecological interactions, particularly in plant defense against herbivores, pathogens, and environmental stressors. Unlike primary metabolites such as carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids, phytochemicals encompass diverse chemical classes such as alkaloids, terpenoids, flavonoids, phenolics, glucosinolates, and saponins.

In recent years, the growing awareness of environmental degradation, pesticide resistance, and the adverse effects of synthetic agrochemicals has stimulated research into plant-derived compounds as potential eco-friendly alternatives. Phytochemicals are biodegradable, often species-specific, and can be integrated into sustainable crop protection systems with minimal ecological disruption. They are increasingly used in the formulation of botanical insecticides, fungicides, nematicides, and herbicides, as well as in biostimulants and plant defence elicitors (Isman, 2006; Dayan *et al.,* 2009).

MAJOR CLASSES OF PHYTOCHEMICALS IN CROP PROTECTION

Phytochemicals are broadly classified according to their chemical structures and biosynthetic origins. The most relevant classes in crop protection include alkaloids, terpenoids, phenolics, glucosinolates, saponins, and peptides.

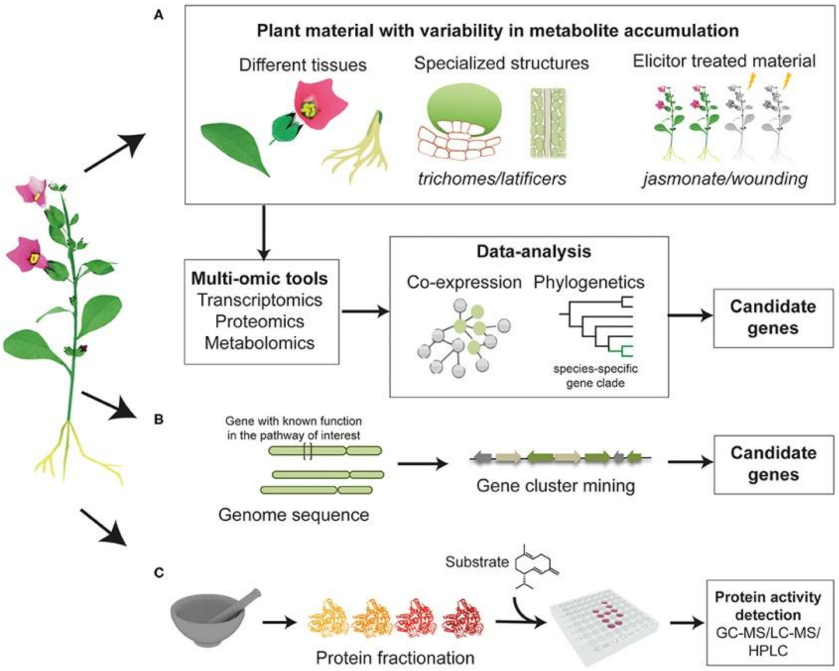


Figure 1: Phytochemicals in Crop Protection

ALKALOIDS

Alkaloids are nitrogen-containing compounds derived primarily from amino acids. They exhibit potent bioactivity against a range of pests due to their neurotoxic effects. Examples include nicotine (from *Nicotiana tabacum*), caffeine (from *Coffea* spp.), and matrine (from *Sophora flavescens*). These compounds act on insect nervous systems by interacting with neurotransmitter receptors or ion channels, leading to paralysis and death (Koul, 2011). Their potential in integrated pest management (IPM) lies in their specificity and rapid biodegradation.

TERPENOIDS

Terpenoids, or isoprenoids, represent one of the largest classes of natural compounds, derived from the five-carbon isoprene unit. Monoterpenes, sesquiterpenes, and diterpenes are commonly found in essential oils from aromatic plants such as mint, thyme, and neem. Pyrethrins (from *Chrysanthemum cinerariifolium*) and azadirachtin (from *Azadirachta indica*) are well-known terpenoids used as commercial bioinsecticides (Cantrell *et al.*, 2012). These compounds exhibit insecticidal, repellent, and growth regulatory activities and are key components in organic and eco-friendly pest management strategies.

PHENOLICS AND POLYPHENOLS

Phenolic compounds, including flavonoids, tannins, and phenolic acids, contribute significantly to plant defense. They exhibit antimicrobial, antioxidant, and deterrent properties. Phenolics can inhibit pathogen enzymes, disrupt microbial cell membranes, and act as feeding deterrents for herbivores (Bhattacharya & Basak, 2018). Their role in reinforcing plant cell walls and modulating oxidative stress pathways enhances plant resistance to biotic and abiotic stress.

GLUCOSINOLATES AND ISOTHIOCYANATES

Glucosinolates are sulfur- and nitrogen-containing secondary metabolites typical of Brassicaceae plants. Upon hydrolysis by the enzyme myrosinase, they yield isothiocyanates, which are potent biofumigants. These compounds suppress soil-borne pathogens, nematodes, and weeds and have been exploited in biofumigation practices using mustard and other Brassica cover crops (Lengai *et al.*, 2020).

SAPONINS AND GLYCOSIDES

Saponins, characterized by their amphiphilic structure, have surface-active properties that enable them to disrupt cell membranes of fungi, insects, and nematodes. They can function as antifeedants or toxins depending on concentration and target organism (Duke, 2010). Glycosides such as cardiac glycosides and cyanogenic glycosides also contribute to plant defense through toxicity upon ingestion by herbivores.

PROTEINACEOUS COMPOUNDS

Certain plant proteins, such as lectins, protease inhibitors, and defensins, provide defense against insects and pathogens by inhibiting digestive enzymes or altering gut physiology. These compounds are increasingly being explored for bioengineering pest-resistant crops (Singh *et al.*, 2016).

MECHANISMS OF ACTION

Phytochemicals influence pests, pathogens, and weeds through multiple biochemical mechanisms:

Neurotoxicity – Alkaloids such as nicotine interfere with neurotransmission in insect nervous systems.

Hormonal disruption – Terpenoids like azadirachtin affect ecdysone-mediated molting, reducing insect development and reproduction (Chaudhary *et al.*, 2017).

Membrane disruption – Saponins and essential oils cause leakage of cellular contents in microbes and insects.

Antioxidant and antimicrobial activity – Phenolic compounds generate oxidative stress in microbial pathogens.

Allelopathy – Certain phytochemicals inhibit germination and growth of competing weeds (Duke, 2010).

Elicitation of plant defences – Compounds such as salicylic acid and jasmonates activate systemic acquired resistance (SAR) or induced systemic resistance (ISR), enhancing the plant's immune response.

These multifaceted mechanisms reduce the likelihood of resistance development in pest populations and contribute to sustainable pest management.

APPLICATIONS IN AGRICULTURE

BOTANICAL INSECTICIDES

Botanical insecticides have been commercialized for various crops. Pyrethrins, extracted from chrysanthemum flowers, provide rapid knockdown of insect pests. Azadirachtin from neem exhibits antifeedant and growth-regulating properties against over 200 insect species. Essential oils from peppermint, eucalyptus, and clove are also utilized for repelling or killing pests (Isman, 2020). Their rapid degradation minimizes residue accumulation but may require repeated applications.

BOTANICAL FUNGICIDES AND BACTERICIDES

Essential oils and phenolic extracts display strong antifungal and antibacterial effects. Thymol and eugenol inhibit fungal spore germination and disrupt membrane integrity, making them useful in postharvest disease management. Neem extracts and mustard biofumigation are effective against a range of phytopathogenic fungi (Dubey *et al.*, 2010).

BIOHERBICIDES AND ALLELOPATHIC AGENTS

Phytochemicals such as isothiocyanates and sorgoleone serve as natural herbicides by inhibiting weed germination and root elongation. The incorporation of Brassica residues into soil (biofumigation) effectively suppresses weeds and pathogens (Pavela & Benelli, 2016). However, field consistency and selectivity remain major challenges.

NEMATODE SUPPRESSION

Nematicidal phytochemicals, including alkaloids and sulfur compounds, have shown efficacy against root-knot nematodes. Neem and castor oil cake amendments are traditional and effective organic strategies in nematode control.

PLANT GROWTH PROMOTION

Some phytochemicals act as natural growth regulators. For example, brassinosteroids, salicylic acid, and jasmonates enhance stress tolerance and improve germination and vigor. Extracts rich in phenolics and terpenoids are used as biostimulants in organic farming (Kumar *et al.*, 2020).

POSTHARVEST PROTECTION

Volatile oils of cinnamon, thyme, and clove act as natural preservatives, reducing microbial spoilage in stored fruits and grains. Their application as vapor-phase treatments or edible coatings reduces the need for synthetic fungicides (Walia *et al.*, 2017).

FORMULATION AND DELIVERY TECHNOLOGIES

Phytochemicals often exhibit volatility, instability, or poor water solubility. Modern formulation technologies improve their effectiveness through encapsulation, emulsification, and controlled release systems. Nanoencapsulation enhances the stability and persistence of essential oils, while emulsifiable concentrates enable better dispersion in aqueous solutions. The development of polymer-based carriers and biodegradable coatings has improved the shelf life and performance of botanical pesticides (Pavela & Benelli, 2018).

BENEFITS AND LIMITATIONS

Phytochemicals provide multiple benefits in crop protection:

Eco-friendliness and biodegradability – Reduced persistence and minimal environmental accumulation.

Reduced resistance development – Diverse modes of action lower the likelihood of pest resistance.

Compatibility with IPM and organic systems – Allow integration with biological control agents.

Public acceptance – Growing preference for pesticide residue-free produce.

However, their **limitations** include inconsistent field performance, high variability due to plant source and extraction method, shorter residual activity, and sometimes higher cost. In addition, some compounds such as nicotine and rotenone have human toxicity concerns, highlighting the need for safety evaluation (Tripathi *et al.*, 2009).

REGULATORY AND QUALITY CONSIDERATIONS

Although phytochemicals are natural, they are still subject to rigorous regulatory evaluation to ensure efficacy and safety. The variability in chemical composition requires standardization through marker compound quantification and good manufacturing practices. Toxicological and residue assessments are mandatory for registration. Regulatory frameworks such as those established by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the European Union recognize “minimum-risk” botanical pesticides under simplified approval procedures (Sparks & Nauen, 2015).

CASE STUDIES

NEEM (AZADIRACHTIN)

Neem-based products, rich in azadirachtin, serve as multifunctional biopesticides. They regulate insect growth, inhibit feeding, and suppress reproduction. Neem seed extracts are used in foliar sprays, soil amendments, and seed treatments, offering long-term pest management benefits with minimal non-target toxicity (Chaudhary *et al.*, 2017).

PYRETHRINS

Derived from *Chrysanthemum* flowers, pyrethrins act as fast-acting insecticides with low mammalian toxicity. Though susceptible to photodegradation, advances in microencapsulation have enhanced their stability for agricultural use (Cantrell *et al.,* 2012).

BIOFUMIGATION USING BRASSICA

Brassica cover crops rich in glucosinolates are incorporated into soil to release isothiocyanates upon decomposition. This technique reduces soil-borne pathogens and nematodes and is widely practiced in organic systems (Lengai *et al.,* 2020).

FUTURE PROSPECTS AND RESEARCH DIRECTIONS

Future research aims to integrate phytochemicals more effectively into sustainable agriculture by improving standardization, formulation, and mechanistic understanding. Advances in metabolomics, genetic engineering, and synthetic biology can enhance phytochemical production and tailor their expression in crops. Nanotechnology-based delivery systems promise better stability and efficacy. Additionally, socio-economic studies on adoption and scalability are critical for global implementation (Uddin *et al.,* 2020).

CONCLUSION

Phytochemicals play a crucial role in reshaping sustainable agriculture by providing environmentally friendly alternatives to conventional pesticides. Their diverse chemical structures and multifaceted biological activities offer opportunities for pest management, plant growth promotion, and stress mitigation. Despite challenges of variability, stability, and regulation, continuous advances in extraction, formulation, and delivery technologies are bridging the gap between laboratory efficacy and field application. Incorporating phytochemicals within integrated pest management frameworks will ensure reduced chemical inputs, improved soil health, and long-term agricultural sustainability.

REFERENCES

[1]. Ahuja, I., Kissen, R., & Bones, A. M. (2012). Phytoalexins in defense against pathogens. *Trends in Plant Science, 17*(2), 73–90.

[2]. Bhattacharya, A., & Basak, B. B. (2018). The role of phytochemicals in sustainable agriculture. *Journal of Applied and Natural Science, 10*(2), 659–671.

[3]. Cantrell, C. L., Dayan, F. E., & Duke, S. O. (2012). Natural products as sources for new pesticides. *Journal of Natural Products, 75*(6), 1231–1242.

[4]. Chaudhary, S., Kanwar, R. K., & Kanwar, J. R. (2017). Progress on azadirachtin: A biopesticide from the neem tree. *Insects, 8*(1), 29.

[5]. Dayan, F. E., Cantrell, C. L., & Duke, S. O. (2009). Natural products in crop protection. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry, 17*(12), 4022–4034.

[6]. Dubey, N. K., Shukla, R., & Kumar, A. (2010). Prospects of botanical pesticides in sustainable agriculture. *Current Science, 98*(4), 479–480.

[7]. Duke, S. O. (2010). Plant secondary metabolites as allelochemicals. *Allelopathy Journal, 25*(2), 273–302.

[8]. Isman, M. B. (2006). Botanical insecticides, deterrents, and repellents in modern agriculture. *Annual Review of Entomology, 51*, 45–66.

[9]. Isman, M. B. (2020). Botanical insecticides in the twenty-first century—Fulfilling their promise? *Annual Review of Entomology, 65*, 233–249.

[10]. Koul, O. (2011). Phytochemicals and insect control: An overview. *Phytochemistry Reviews, 10*(2), 199–206.

[11]. Kumar, S., Kaushik, N., & Edrisi, S. A. (2020). Plant-based biopesticides for sustainable agriculture. In D. Kumar & P. S. Yadav (Eds.), *Plant Secondary Metabolites: Scope and Potential in Crop Protection* (pp. 131–157). Elsevier.

[12]. Lengai, G. M. W., Muthomi, J. W., & Mbega, E. R. (2020). Phytochemical properties and pesticidal potential of essential oils. *Applied Biological Chemistry, 63*, 52.

[13]. Pavela, R., & Benelli, G. (2016). Essential oils as eco-friendly biopesticides? *Trends in Plant Science, 21*(12), 1000–1017.

[14]. Pavela, R., & Benelli, G. (2018). Ethnobotanical knowledge on plant-derived biopesticides in Europe: A review. *Industrial Crops and Products, 112*, 225–232.

[15]. Singh, H. B., Sarma, B. K., & Keswani, C. (2016). *Advances in Plant Biopesticide Research*. Springer.

[16]. Sparks, T. C., & Nauen, R. (2015). IRAC: Mode of action classification and insecticide resistance management. *Pesticide Biochemistry and Physiology, 121*, 122–128.

[17]. Tripathi, A. K., Upadhyay, S., Bhuiyan, M., & Bhattacharya, P. R. (2009). Prospects of essential oils as biopesticides. *Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytotherapy, 1*(5), 52–63.

[18]. Uddin, S. J., Grice, I. D., & Tiralongo, E. (2020). *Natural Products and Their Bioactive Compounds in Plant Protection*. CRC Press.

[19]. Walia, S., Arora, S., & Koul, O. (2017). Comparative evaluation of plant-derived essential oils as grain protectants. *Journal of Stored Products Research, 73*, 111–118.

Chapter
7

BEYOND NUTRITION: LEVERAGING PHYTOCHEMICALS FOR NEXT-GENERATION NUTRACEUTICALS

J. SHOBA* AND SR.C. SHIBANA

Department of Zoology, St. Mary's College (Autonomous), Thoothukudi
*Corresponding author E-mail: shobaj1976@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Plant-derived medicinal products have attracted increasing global interest due to their high therapeutic potential and minimal side effects. Phytochemicals, the bioactive compounds naturally present in plants, play vital roles as antioxidants, immunity boosters, and regulators of physiological functions. They protect plants from oxidative stress and environmental hazards and, when consumed, offer humans protection against chronic diseases such as cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular, renal, and neurodegenerative disorders. Classified such as carotenoids, phenolics, alkaloids, saponins, organosulfur compounds, and dietary fibers, these substances exhibit diverse biological activities including antioxidant, antidiabetic, anticancer, hypocholesterolemic, antiviral, and immunomodulatory effects. Phytochemicals are increasingly being used to develop functional foods—such as beverages, baked goods, dairy, and meat products—that go beyond basic nutrition to enhance overall well-being. These functional foods support immunity, regulate metabolism, and minimize disease risks through the inclusion of compounds like flavonoids, polyphenols, and phytosterols. The recent interest in plant-based immunity enhancers, particularly following the COVID-19 pandemic, underscores their significance in modern health strategies. The integration of phytonutrients into functional foods represents a promising and sustainable approach to improving global nutrition, preventing chronic illnesses, and supporting long-term health resilience. This chapter highlights the classification, biological activities, and health-promoting mechanisms of phytochemicals, emphasizing their integration into functional food development for sustainable human health.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemicals, Antioxidant, Immunity booster, Anticholesteremic, Antidiabetic, Anticancer, Neuroprotective.

INTRODUCTION

Plant-derived medicinal products are gaining a renowned consumer interest in scientific communities around the world due to their positive effects on human health and minimum/no side effects. Plants have been linked to biologically significant new chemical compounds, which makes them a potential source for the creation of medicinal compounds. These compounds' characterization has resulted in the creation of innovative, affordable drugs with significant therapeutic potential (Ukwuani *et al.*, 2013). Beneficial medicinal effects are caused by secondary products called phytochemicals that are made from plant materials.

Natural bioactive substances called phytochemicals serve as both macro- and micronutrients and provide a host of health advantages to people. In addition to aiding in growth and development, they shield plants from environmental stressors like UV rays, pollution, drought, extreme temperatures, and infections. These substances, which are present in various plant parts such as roots, stems, leaves, flowers, fruits, and seeds, give fruits and vegetables their diverse range of hues and tastes. Different plant species have different phytochemical concentrations, which are impacted by things like variety, cultivation, processing, and cooking techniques. They are thought to complement nutrients in a way that makes it easier for the body to use them efficiently (Nyamai *et al.,* 2016). Because of their antioxidant and free radical scavenging qualities, bioactive phytochemicals found in plant-based foods like fruits, vegetables, and grains significantly lower the risk of developing chronic illnesses (Zhang, Gan, *et al.,* 2015). These phytochemicals have significant advantages for consumers and are highly prized for their beneficial effects on human health. They also have strong antioxidant potential. Researchers and the pharmaceutical industry around the world are interested in phytochemicals derived from dietary sources and medicinal plants because of their strong biological activity.

Demand for health-promoting goods like functional foods enhanced with phytochemicals and probiotics is rising as a result of consumers' growing awareness of and preference for wholesome, balanced diets on a global scale. Beyond traditional nutritional adequacy, the concept of functional foods emphasizes food security and appropriate diet selection in addition to energy, proteins, essential fats, vitamins, and minerals. It is now commonly accepted that foods not only provide for basic nutritional needs but also help to prolong life, prevent disease, and improve health. Significant amounts of physiologically active substances that have positive health effects are frequently found in functional foods. Scientific advancements, growing consumer interest, rising healthcare costs, aging populations, food industry technological advancements, and changing regulations have all contributed to the growth of this field (Hasler, 1996). An overview of the biological functions of phytonutrients in enhancing human health and their possible uses in the creation of functional food products is provided in this chapter.

PHYTONUTRIENTS

Beyond the well-known nutrients like vitamins and minerals, plant sources are abundant in a variety of bioactive compounds. Phytochemicals, sometimes referred to as phytonutrients, are a broad category of advantageous substances derived from plants. Plant-based foods, such as fruits, vegetables, whole grains, legumes, beans, nuts, seeds, and herbs, contain these naturally occurring compounds. Phytochemicals have a lot of potential to improve health and lower the risk of disease because of their widespread presence in the human diet and generally low toxicity. As a result, Nyamai *et al.* (2016) frequently refer to them as bioactive food components. Plants and foods derived from them are usually used to identify and extract valuable phytonutrients that are necessary for human nutrition.

Based on their chemical makeup and functional characteristics, phytonutrients are divided into a number of major groups. Carotenoids, phenolic compounds (including flavonoids, phytoestrogens, and phenolic acids), phytosterols and phytostanols, tocotrienols, organosulfur compounds (such as glucosinolates and allium compounds), and nondigestible carbohydrates (such as dietary fiber and prebiotics) are some important groups with noteworthy health-promoting potential. Phytochemicals are especially abundant in fruits and vegetables with rich, deep colors. It is advised to eat a broad range of plant-based foods, or a "rainbow," to guarantee a sufficient intake of various phytonutrients and vital nutrients. Fig. 6.1 shows the main types of phytonutrients.

HEALTH-PROMOTING ABILITY OF PHYTOCHEMICALS

Phytochemicals derived from plants are currently being acknowledged as promising options for the treatment and prevention of a wide range of metabolic diseases. Consumer interest in phytotherapy, which uses extracts from natural sources as therapeutic or health-promoting agents, is growing significantly (Berger & Shenkin, 2006). Phytochemicals have long been recognized as protective agents against a range of chronic illnesses and as aids in preserving physiological balance. The numerous benefits of fruits, vegetables, and their phytonutrients for human health are further highlighted by recent experimental research. Antidiabetic, anti-inflammatory, anti-aging, antimicrobial, antiparasitic, antidepressant, anticancer, antioxidant, and wound-healing properties are just a few of the many preventive and therapeutic qualities exhibited by these bioactive compounds. Because of their natural availability, low risk of side effects, and affordability, their appeal is still growing on a global scale.

Numerous biological mechanisms, including the suppression of oxidant formation, neutralization of reactive oxygen species, reduction of hazardous intermediates, activation of cellular repair processes, and induction of apoptosis, are associated with the positive health effects of phytochemicals. The need for nutrient-enriched foods enhanced with bioactive compounds that can fight health-related disorders is growing as a result of the aging population and the increased incidence of diet- and lifestyle-related diseases, particularly in developing countries. Strongly bioactive and lowly toxic phytochemicals offer a viable and effective substitute for conventional methods of treating a variety of illnesses. Frequent ingestion of foods high in phytochemicals provides significant health advantages and defense against long-term degenerative diseases, such as cancer, heart disease, neurological disorders, diabetes, high blood pressure, inflammation, and microbial infections. Table 6.1 lists the main phytonutrients of nutraceutical importance, along with their sources and related health advantages (Charu & Dhan, 2014).

BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES OF PHYTOCHEMICALS

The risk of developing cardiometabolic diseases is significantly influenced by diet. Since they are the direct or indirect source of many synthetic drugs, plants have long been considered one of the most reliable sources for managing disease. Due to their relative safety, affordability, and accessibility when compared to synthetic medications, plant-based remedies have been used extensively since ancient times. Antioxidant, immune-boosting, anticholesteremic, antidiabetic, anticancer, renoprotective, neuroprotective, and antiviral effects are just a few of the many health-promoting and disease-preventing qualities found in plants and their derivatives (Table 6.2). The presence of bioactive phytonutrients like flavonoids, alkaloids, and tannins is primarily responsible for these therapeutic advantages and greatly adds to their medicinal value.

ANTIOXIDANT

Reactive oxygen species (ROS) are naturally produced by the human body during aerobic metabolism and can play a role in the development of diseases like cancer and cardiovascular conditions. Antioxidants are protective compounds that act as natural food preservatives and shield cells from damage brought on by free radicals. Because of their greater safety and fewer adverse effects, natural antioxidants—secondary metabolites of phytochemicals—are typically chosen over synthetic ones (Duduku *et al.*, 2007).

To stop oxidative damage to sensitive molecules, plants produce a variety of strong antioxidants, including carotenoids, flavonoids, cinnamic acids, benzoic acids, folic acid, ascorbic acid, tocopherols, and tocotrienols (Hollman, 2001). In the human body, well-known antioxidants such as alpha-tocopherol, ascorbic acid, and beta-carotene directly combat free radicals (Hayek, 2000). Natural antioxidants derived from plants are safer and have higher antioxidant activity than synthetic sources. The main function of phytochemicals, which are bioactive substances that are not nutrients, is to neutralize free radicals produced during oxidative stress and stop them from damaging cells.

Antioxidant-rich phytochemicals can be found in abundance in fruits like berries, grapes, Chinese dates, pomegranate, guava, sweetshop, persimmon, Chinese wampee, and plum. It's interesting to note that substantial concentrations of these advantageous antioxidants can also be found in by-products like fruit peels and seeds. Some vegetables are also well-known for their potent antioxidant properties, such as broccoli, ginseng leaves, green soybean, cowpea, and caraway. Antioxidant phytochemicals are especially abundant in pigmented cereal grains like black, red, and purple rice (Yu-Jie Zhang, 2015). One of the best substances for squelching singlet oxygen and scavenging free radicals is lycopene, a potent dietary antioxidant (Merve *et al.*, 2017).

Catechins and other polyphenolic compounds are well-known for their potent antioxidant properties, though in some circumstances they may also act as pro-oxidants inside of cells. Strong natural antioxidants, tea catechins in particular are very good at scavenging reactive oxygen species (Charu & Dhan, 2014). To extract antioxidants from plant materials, a variety of extraction methods are frequently used, including Soxhlet extraction, subcritical water extraction (SWE), pressurized liquid extraction (PLE), microwave-assisted extraction (MAE), and supercritical fluid extraction (SFE) (Duduku *et al.,* 2007).

IMMUNITY BOOSTER

Normal physiological and immunological processes depend on a healthy immune system. The body's defenses against illnesses and infections are strengthened by a balanced immune response. A promising strategy for fostering optimum health through daily, well-controlled nutrition is provided by phytochemicals. They are thought to be powerful sources of bioactive substances that are essential for boosting immunity. By strengthening immune responses, including natural foods like fruits and vegetables in the diet can help the body's defenses. Immunonutrition is the deliberate application of particular nutrients to affect and maximize immune system function.

"Immunonutrients" or "immunity regulators" are nutrients that specifically affect immune function, such as vitamins, minerals, amino acids (like glutamine and arginine), nucleotides, probiotics, and omega-3 fatty acids (Robert, 2009). When taken as supplements in higher concentrations than are normally obtained from diet, these naturally occurring bioactive compounds serve as the basis for functional foods that have the potential to have a beneficial effect on the immune system. Beneficial fatty acids from fish, disease-fighting substances from spices, and antioxidants from fruits and berries are a few examples (Jim & Edward, 2010).

Fruits and vegetables have a well-established role in regulating immunity. Studies have indicated that fruits are abundant in bioactive substances, such as vitamins, minerals, and phytochemicals like phenolics, flavonoids, tannins, and β-carotene. By scavenging free radicals, natural antioxidants such as vitamins A, C, and E, polyphenols, and minerals like selenium help to strengthen the immune system. By encouraging lymphocyte proliferation, lowering oxidative cellular damage, scavenging reactive species, and enhancing immunomodulatory and anti-inflammatory responses, these substances improve immunity (Shruti *et al.,* 2022). Nutraceuticals derived from plants, such as glycoproteins, alkaloids, phenolics, and saponins, have also shown immunomodulatory and anti-inflammatory properties. The potential of other bioactive substances like terpenoids, polysaccharides, and fatty acids as immune-modulating agents in the treatment of immune-related illnesses is also being investigated.

Vitamin C has been shown to improve immune function by boosting the production of antibodies and white blood cells that fight infection and by preventing viruses from entering the body. Fruit juices like orange, guava, and kiwi, as well as vegetables like broccoli, tomatoes, red capsicum, and different colored berries, are excellent sources of vitamin C (Rose, 2007). Whole oats, wheat germ, avocado, raw nuts, seeds, fish, poultry, meat, and eggs are dietary sources of vitamin E, which is also known to have immune-boosting qualities. Essential amino acids and fatty acids that promote immune health can be found in nuts (like walnuts, Brazil nuts, and almonds) and seeds (like pumpkin seeds) (Turner, 2007). Shiitake mushrooms are a noteworthy example of a natural immune enhancer because of their lentinan content, which strengthens immunity (Jim & Edward, 2010). Important phytochemicals in honey, ginger, turmeric, garlic, black pepper, clove, onion, basil, and ginseng have also been shown to boost immunity and have antiviral qualities, including the ability to fight COVID-19.

Due to their beneficial effects on the immune system, several amino acids, including arginine, are now used in food fortification. It has also been demonstrated that omega-3 fatty acids, which are present in foods like fish, flaxseed, nuts, and seeds, improve immune function (Kolakowski *et al.,* 2006). As a crucial immunostimulating functional ingredient, β-glucan offers a promising future in enhancing animal health by boosting resistance to bacterial, fungal, viral, and parasitic infections (London, 2008). Additionally, probiotics that increase immunity are becoming more and more popular with consumers.

Demand for plant-based functional foods that can boost immunity against COVID-19 in people of all ages has increased as a result of the current pandemic. The best defense against infections is still a healthy innate immune system. The saying, "Prevention is better than cure," perfectly captures the enormous potential of functional foods to boost immunity. Because of their wide range of bioactivities, excellent tolerability, and positive patient compliance, phytochemicals present a promising strategy for immunomodulation and are useful tools for promoting health and preventing disease (Antonella *et al.,* 2020).

ANTICHOLESTEREMIC

The prevalence of hypercholesterolemia has significantly increased due to changes in dietary and lifestyle choices. Elevated levels of total cholesterol or low-density lipoprotein (LDL) or decreased levels of high-density lipoprotein (HDL) are the hallmarks of this condition. Dietary and lifestyle modifications are frequently effective ways to control hypercholesterolemia. Because it is a significant risk factor for atherosclerosis, cardiovascular diseases are a silent but dangerous health issue. To regulate or maintain healthy cholesterol levels, more people are using synthetic medications like ezetimibe, niacin, and statins (Scott *et al.,* 2022). Nonetheless, natural products are appealing substitutes for synthetic drugs due to their substantial lipid-lowering potential and low adverse effects. Because of growing consumer demand, interest in phytochemicals that lower cholesterol is expanding quickly on a global scale. Nowadays, phytochemicals are acknowledged as potentially effective hypocholesterolemic agents. Because they can decrease the absorption and oxidation of cholesterol while increasing its catabolism and elimination, substances like phytosterols, phenolics, saponins, alkaloids, dietary fibers, and lectins are referred to as natural "cholesterol busters" (Zhaohui *et al.,* 2017). Cereals, oatmeal, fruits, vegetables, legumes, and fermented foods are common sources of these healthful substances.

By preventing intestinal cholesterol absorption, adding phytosterols to the diet is a useful way to improve lipid profiles. According to Peter *et al.* (1997), this can dramatically lower low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol levels and lowers the risk of coronary heart disease. Because of their ability to lower cholesterol, studies emphasize the significance of incorporating phytosterols into heart-healthy diets. According to Zhaohui *et al.* (2017), phenolic compounds are also known for their health advantages, including their ability to lower cholesterol and act as antioxidants. By preventing the absorption of cholesterol, saponins—naturally occurring plant compounds with surface-active foaming properties—help lower serum and liver cholesterol (Ozaifa *et al.,* 2022). Numerous bioactivities, such as antifungal, antibacterial, antihypercholesterolemic, and anticancer effects, are displayed by these phytochemicals. By creating insoluble complexes with cholesterol in the intestine and decreasing its absorption, saponins from fenugreek and asparagus are especially useful in preventing hypercholesterolemia (Amany Ali *et al.,* 2019). In order to promote satiety and decrease food intake, plant lectins—proteins that bind carbohydrates—interact with the intestinal brush border to trigger the release of anorectic neuropeptides (Ramirez-Jiménez *et al.,* 2015). By combining with fats, cholesterol, and bile acids to form complexes that prevent pancreatic lipases from breaking down fats and promote hepatic bile synthesis and cholesterol excretion, dietary fibers help control cholesterol (Giovane & Napoli, 2010). Furthermore, dietary fibers aid in the development of Lactobacillus acidophilus and other beneficial intestinal microflora, and fibers that specifically support these microorganisms are referred to as prebiotics (Slavin, 2013).

ANTIDIABETIC

High blood glucose levels and impaired insulin function are hallmarks of diabetes mellitus (DM), one of the most prevalent medical conditions in the world. Elevated blood glucose levels and impaired insulin secretion and/or action are hallmarks of diabetes mellitus (DM), one of the most prevalent medical conditions in the world. Phytochemicals obtained from medicinal plants are currently receiving more attention as viable options for diabetes management and prevention. Strong antidiabetic effects have been found in bioactive substances like alkaloids, glycosides, dietary fibers, polysaccharides, and phenolics, which include flavonoids, terpenoids, and steroids (Firdous, 2014)). For instance, by increasing insulin activity, the barberry tree's berberine alkaloid has several antidiabetic effects. Plants like grapes, plums, and nuts contain resveratrol, which has been demonstrated to lower insulin resistance and control blood glucose levels (Mengjie *et al.,* 2021). The glycoside "Jambolin," which is also present in jamun seeds, has hypoglycemic properties by either promoting the release of insulin from β-cells or preventing the conversion of starch to sugar.

Flavonoids are important plant metabolites that have significant hypoglycemic effects. They include anthocyanins, catechins, flavanols, flavones, and flavanones. These substances, which are found naturally in fruits, vegetables, drinks, chocolates, herbs, and other plants, have antidiabetic effects in part because they are antioxidants and in part because they alter cellular signaling pathways. Citrus fruits are rich in hesperidin, which is essential for slowing the development of hyperglycemia. Other flavonoids with a wide range of pharmacological properties, including the ability to lower blood sugar, include rutin, kaempferol, quercetin, genistein, daidzein, and naringenin (Patrick & Isaac, 2018). A strong antioxidant and antidiabetic agent, epigallocatechin gallate is mostly present in green tea (Mengjie *et al.,* 2021). Numerous cohort studies have shown how beneficial dietary fiber is for managing diabetes. Diets rich in fiber, especially soluble fibers, help diabetic patients manage their blood sugar levels, improve their metabolism of carbohydrates, reduce their total and LDL cholesterol, and enjoy other health benefits. For example, in mice with type 2 diabetes and obesity caused by a high-fat diet, oral administration of β-glucans, a form of dietary fiber from barley, dramatically lowered blood glucose levels (Cao *et al.,* 2017).

Numerous pharmacological and biological effects have been associated with curcumin, a bioactive compound primarily found in Curcuma longa. Delaying the onset of diabetes, improving β-cell function, preventing β-cell death, and lowering insulin resistance are some of its metabolic advantages (Switi *et al.,* 2014). Because of their capacity to enhance glycemic control and reduce insulin resistance, fenugreek seeds have also been emphasized by numerous studies as a useful adjunct in the treatment of diabetes. Trigonelline, nicotinic acid, and coumarin are the main phytochemicals that give fenugreek its antidiabetic properties. According to studies, fenugreek seed powder is a powerful natural food that can control diabetes (Genet *et al.,* 2019). These bioactive phytochemicals' potent anti-inflammatory qualities are largely responsible for their therapeutic potential.

ANTICANCER

Significant pharmacological effects of phytochemicals have been shown in the treatment of cancer and diabetes, among other chronic degenerative diseases. Because of their improved therapeutic effectiveness and decreased adverse effects in cancer patients, phytonutrients are regarded as extremely promising. The main alkaloid in chili peppers, capsaicin, inhibits carcinogen activity in a number of ways, making it a cancer-preventive agent. It can also increase patients' sensitivity to chemoradiotherapy, reduce treatment doses, and improve tolerance. Natural polyphenols found in green tea, especially catechins, have antioxidant qualities and work in concert to inhibit the growth of cancer cells. The most prevalent and powerful catechin in green tea, epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG), is essential for cancer chemoprevention because it inhibits tumor growth and triggers apoptosis in cancers of the brain, kidney, breast, and colon (Charu & Dhan, 2014). According to Merve *et al.* (2017), dietary consumption of lycopene, an antioxidant carotenoid primarily found in tomatoes, is linked to a decreased risk of cancer, especially prostate cancer, through mechanisms such as scavenging reactive oxygen species (ROS), upregulating detoxification pathways, and inhibiting cell proliferation. Prostate, colorectal, breast, pancreatic, brain, and head and neck cancers are among the cancers that curcumin, another phytochemical, has demonstrated anticancer activity against.

Lupeol, Asiatic acid, celastrol, auraptene, ursolic acid, saidmanetin, indole-3-carbinol, and hypericin are among the metabolites of plants that have antitumor properties. In order to control immune responses, apoptosis, cell growth, and the stromal microenvironment, these substances affect cellular signaling (Irina *et al.,* 2019). Cruciferous vegetables like cauliflower, broccoli, and cabbage contain important bioactive compounds called isothiocyanates, which have been identified as potential anticancer agents. By focusing on important characteristics of cancer, such as tumor growth, cell proliferation, angiogenesis, and apoptosis, benzyl isothiocyanate, for example, exhibits anticancer effects (Alok Ranjan *et al.,* 2019). Other phytochemicals, including isoflavones, berberine, quercetin, and resveratrol, have also demonstrated chemopreventive qualities and may help prevent cancer while also lessening the toxicity of synthetic medications.

RENOPROTECTIVE

The gradual deterioration of kidney function over time is the hallmark of chronic renal disease, which is becoming more common as diabetes and hypertension rates rise and has a substantial negative impact on human health. Because treating chronic renal failure can be very expensive, there is increasing interest in using phytochemicals for renoprotective effects. It is possible to identify and separate bioactive phytochemicals from medicinal plants for use in kidney disease treatment. The potential uses of several plant-derived compounds in the treatment of renal disorders are presently being researched globally (Parakh *et al.,* 2022). Curcumin, resveratrol, capsaicin, quercetin, and genistein are among the phytochemicals found in medicinal plants that have been shown to modulate chronic kidney disease. Because of their renoprotective qualities, flavonoids in particular have shown promise as pharmacological agents. They are an affordable treatment option because of their antitumor activity, which also helps to inhibit the growth of renal carcinoma cells (Mario *et al.,* 2022).

NEUROPROTECTIVE

Research backs up the use of plants as complementary treatments for neurodegenerative conditions like Parkinson's and Alzheimer's. According to research, phytochemicals such as resveratrol from grapes, wine, and peanuts, capsaicin from red peppers, curcumin from turmeric, and epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) from tea may have neuroprotective effects (Lee *et al.,* 2012). By altering the activity of receptors for important inhibitory neurotransmitters, these substances support the preservation of the chemical equilibrium in the brain. Neuroprotection refers to methods and systems that prevent damage to neurons in the central nervous system (CNS). Alkaloids, phenols, flavonoids, terpenoids, and saponins have garnered increasing attention lately due to their potential to affect neuronal function and fend off age-related neurodegeneration (Kumar & Khanum, 2012).

ANTIVIRAL (SPECIAL REFERENCE TO SARS-COV-2)

Many researchers have focused on natural compounds as possible substitutes for creating antiviral medications and treating associated complications in response to the recent COVID-19 pandemic. In addition to computational docking studies that predict phytochemicals' activity against members of the coronavirus family, such as SARS-CoV, MERS-CoV, and SARS-CoV-2, numerous in vitro and in vivo studies are being conducted to assess the efficacy of phytochemicals against coronaviruses, specifically SARS-CoV-2. Natural polyphenols like myricetin (Yu *et al.,* 2012), apigenin (Ryu *et al.,* 2010a), kaempferol (Schwarz *et al.,* 2014), quercetin (Chiow *et al.,* 2016), and resveratrol (Wahedi *et al.,* 2020) have been shown to have antiviral properties against coronavir uses. Lung injury is one of the main side effects of COVID-19 and is mostly caused by inflammatory cascades that are started by the SARS-CoV-2 infection (Fakhri *et al.,* 2020).

In order to inhibit the enzymes involved in viral replication, alkaloids, which are nitrogen-containing phytochemicals, can interact with coronavidukerus structural proteins like the spike (S) glycoprotein and nucleocapsid (N) on the viral surface as well as with nonstructural angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) on host cell membranes. Significant anti-SARS-CoV-2 activity has been demonstrated by alkaloids obtained from plants and marine sources, such as berberine, tetrandrine, cepharanthine, lycorine, ergotamine, palmatine, noscapine, and quinine. These substances are promising candidates for treating COVID-19 because they have antiviral, antipyretic, anti-inflammatory, antitussive, and lung-protective qualities in addition to immunomodulatory effects and protective functions against neurotoxicity, cardiotoxicity, nephrotoxicity, and hepatotoxicity (Mohammad *et al.,* 2021).

A substance that is widely present in citrus fruits, hesperidin, has shown promise as an inhibitor of ACE2, which makes it a viable option for clinical trials against SARS-CoV-2 (Haggag *et al.,* 2020). Essential oils contain phytochemicals that are known to be natural anti-HCoV agents (Nadjib, 2020). Garlic essential oil, for example, has demonstrated potent inhibitory activity against the SARS-CoV-2 receptor ACE2, and its primary constituents, organosulfur compounds, have a variety of pharmacological effects (Thuy *et al.,* 2020). The Ministry of Ayush and the Ayurvedic medical system advise using herbal medications sparingly in order to fight COVID-19 (Remya & Minnie, 2020).

As a result, plant extracts and phytochemicals have attracted a lot of interest as possible viral inhibitors for creating novel anti-CoV medications and treating related issues. Significantly, the COVID-19 pandemic has rekindled interest in the use of medicinal plants throughout the world.

PHYTOCHEMICALS-BASED FUNCTIONAL FOODS

The future of food processing is being shaped by the growing consumer demand for wholesome, sustainable, aesthetically pleasing, and nutritious food products. The creation of functional foods has been fueled by growing awareness of the connection between nutrition and health. Because of their health-promoting benefits that extend beyond basic nutrition, phytochemicals have garnered increased attention in recent years. Their role in preventing disease has also contributed to the growth of functional foods (Monica & Ioan, 2019). In addition to having nutritional value, functional foods—also known as nutraceuticals, pharma foods, or designer foods—are foods that have a positive impact on a person's physical or mental health. These can include dietary supplements, fortified, enriched, or enhanced foods, as well as regular foods. In addition to providing essential nutrients in excess of what is needed for normal growth and maintenance, functional foods may also contain other bioactive ingredients that have positive physiological effects or other health benefits.

Customers are increasingly using functional foods to improve their nutrition as the link between diet and the prevention of diseases like obesity, cardiovascular disease, and cancer becomes more apparent. This has led to an increase in interest in natural raw materials with high antioxidant activity and dietary fiber content that can be used as functional ingredients in the food industry (Mildner-Szkudlarz *et al.,* 2013). The impact of health considerations on food innovation has increased due to the growing popularity of functional foods. Beverages, dairy products, bakery and confectionery goods, and breakfast cereals are important markets for these products.

FUNCTIONAL DRINKS/BEVERAGES

One of the most versatile types of functional foods is beverages, which offer quick energy restoration and hydration. According to Niharika *et al.,* (2014), functional beverages are nonalcoholic drinks made with vitamins, minerals, fruits, herbs, amino acids, and other bioactive substances to provide particular health advantages. Vitamins, minerals, antioxidants, omega-3 fatty acids, plant extracts, fiber, prebiotics, and probiotics are among the nutrients and bioactive substances that they are excellent carriers of (Maria *et al.,* 2014). Functional drinks can help with weight management, digestion, gut and cardiovascular health, and immune function. Dairy-based drinks like probiotics and fortified beverages, functional milk enhanced with calcium, omega-3, and vitamins, vitamin- and omega-3-fortified juices, and functional waters like mineral- and vitamin-fortified drinks, sports and energy drinks, herbal beverages, and health and wellness drinks are all included in the category of functional beverages (Irene, 2019). To increase their health-promoting effects, food professionals are increasingly incorporating probiotics—foods that contain live microorganisms, primarily bacteria, that provide health benefits when consumed in adequate amounts—into new delivery vehicles.

The growing demand for performance-enhancing beverages in sports is a major factor driving the market expansion for functional drinks. Rehydration, energy restoration, mental clarity, athletic performance, and the potential avoidance of joint pain are all aided by functional sports drinks. Essential electrolytes that are lost through perspiration during training or competition, including sodium, potassium, chloride, calcium, phosphate, and magnesium, are included in these drinks (Evans *et al.,* 2017). Salt is added to sports drinks to support important physiological processes like energy supply and fluid retention.

B vitamins help with metabolism and energy production, while amino acids are added to improve muscle function and lessen fatigue. While complex carbohydrates offer sustained energy, simple carbohydrates offer a quick energy boost (Stefania *et al.,* 2018).

Fruits, vegetables, and herbs are commonly used to make plant-based drinks, either by themselves or in combination with other ingredients like fiber, vitamins, and minerals. Because of their high concentration of bioactive substances, such as carotenoids, phenolic acids, flavonoids, coumarins, alkaloids, polyacetylenes, saponins, and terpenoids, herbal teas and beverages are becoming more and more popular worldwide among health-conscious consumers. According to research, these bioactive ingredients help explain the diverse biological effects of tea (Chandrasekara & Shahidi, 2018). Plant-based drinks have a lot of potential to improve health by scavenging free radicals because of their antioxidant qualities.

FUNCTIONAL BAKERY AND CONFECTIONERY

In the upcoming years, the functional confectionery market is anticipated to grow due to the rising consumption of bakery and confectionery products across all age groups. Because cereal-based products are becoming more and more popular, the bakery industry is set to grow. Confectionery products made from flour are a great way to fortify and improve nutrition, enabling the delivery of functional foods in a way that is convenient for consumers. Replacing conventional flour with alternative flours, such as whole wheat flour or flours derived from other cereals and non-cereals, such as oats, barley, rice, soy, buckwheat, and flaxseed, is a key tactic for enhancing the nutritional content and functionality of these products. Whole grains lower the risk of cancer, diabetes, obesity, and cardiovascular diseases because they are high in dietary fiber, trace minerals, antioxidants, and phenolic compounds (Sanja & Asima, 2021).

In addition to their high nutritional value, pseudo-cereals like buckwheat, amaranth, and quinoa are becoming more popular due to their inherent gluten-free status. Using composite flours, such as wheat flour mixed with soy, peanut, or corn germ flour, and adding health-promoting ingredients like whey protein concentrate and skim milk powder, biscuit protein enrichment has also gained attention (Aggarwal *et al.,* 2016). A variety of fruits, cereals, and legumes are acknowledged as important sources for improving confections made with flour and adding useful qualities. Because of their antimutagenic, anticarcinogenic and antioxidant properties, fruits in particular have drawn a lot of attention as sources of bioactive compounds.

This makes them particularly pertinent to cakes, biscuits, and other bakery goods in the confectionery sector.

Sugar has long been the mainstay of the confectionery industry, with well-known goods like chocolate, candies, and chewing gum. Although sugar-based confections are still widely consumed, there is increasing interest in lowering the amount of sugar in this industry. Key components of sugar-free confections are sugar alcohols, also known as polyols, which have several practical advantages, including lower calorie content, a lower risk of cancer, possible anti-cancer and prebiotic effects, and a decrease in hyperlipidemia (Albert Zumbe *et al.*, 2001). The confectionery industry has been concentrating more on creating low-calorie, high-fiber products in response to consumer demand for healthier options. The market for functional confections is anticipated to grow as a result of consumers' growing interest in sugar-free and functional products brought on by health consciousness. Strategies such as substituting sugar with alternative sweeteners, reducing fat content, or completely eliminating fat can help lower the caloric value of flour-based confectionery items.

FUNCTIONAL DAIRY PRODUCTS

Due to their inherent nutritional value, dairy products are important to the market for functional foods. Dairy-based drinks become functional drinks with significant health benefits when bioactive ingredients are added. Fortified beverages, such as those enhanced with probiotics, prebiotics, vitamins, minerals, and whey-based drinks, are examples of functional dairy products. Vitamin and mineral fortification aids in making up for nutrients lost during processing. Furthermore, whey, a by-product of making cheese, has been successfully utilized to create functional drinks that contain whey (Deepak & Sheweta, 2019).

Due to the substantial health benefits of fermented dairy products, the range of functional products has increased. Probiotics are now a major focus of human diets and are thought to be necessary ingredients in functional foods. According to estimates, probiotic foods make up between 60 and 70 percent of the entire functional food market, which is in line with the growing consumer awareness of the health benefits of functional foods (Pathan *et al.,* 2017). Numerous studies have been conducted worldwide on the use of probiotics in dairy and non-dairy beverages. Yogurt, lassi, ice cream, and cheese are examples of dairy products that have long been used as efficient probiotic delivery systems. Three primary ways that probiotics work are by boosting the immune system, generating antimicrobial compounds, and competitively inhibiting pathogenic bacteria (Jim & Edward, 2010). The International Dairy Federation (IDF) advises that at least 10^7 viable probiotic cells per gram be present at the time of consumption in order for probiotics to have health benefits.

Because dairy products contain cholesterol, consumers are becoming more interested in nondairy probiotic beverages than traditional dairy products due to growing health concerns (Behera & Panda, 2020). Numerous nondairy probiotics made from different sources, including fruits, vegetables, grains, and legumes, have been developed as a result of this trend. To produce functional dairy products with encouraging biological effects, cultured dairy products can also be enhanced with bioactive substances such as soy isoflavones, oat beta-glucan, and carotenoids or flavonoids from specific fruits. According to Daniela *et al.* (2018), nondairy probiotic drinks have a high phytochemical content, lower blood pressure and cholesterol, and improve immune function, among other health advantages. Additionally, they provide a healthy substitute for dairy probiotics, which makes them particularly desirable to customers who are lactose intolerant.

To isolate specific bioactive ingredients and guarantee the successful functionalization of dairy products, a variety of extraction and encapsulation techniques have been used (Amin, 2018). Functional foods, soft drinks, and other food products contain phytochemicals, which have significant nutritional value and economic importance.

MEAT PRODUCTS

As the idea of functional food has gained popularity, producers of meat products have started to restructure their goods by adding phytonutrients to improve their functional qualities. Meat products can be made healthier by reducing or eliminating ingredients that are thought to be harmful or by adding ingredients that are good for your health (Bhat & Bhat, 2011). Meat products are useful for delivering different bioactive compounds in the functional food industry, leading to the creation of functional meat products. The purpose of these products is to reduce the pro-oxidant effects associated with consuming large amounts of meat. Adding dietary fibers or non-meat proteins from plant sources like soy, Bengal gram, and buckwheat can further improve health benefits. The production of meat substitutes is also made possible by the texturized nature of soy protein. In order to achieve desired health effects, research has concentrated on reformulating meat-based functional foods by adding bioactive compounds and lowering animal fat. As a result, meat-based functional foods present a significant chance to raise the nutritional value of meat products while satisfying changing consumer needs.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVE

The pharmaceutical and agrochemical industries are constantly searching for new plant sources, which necessitates constant improvement. Growing interest in sustainable food ingredients also seems encouraging, and the creation of functional foods is a trend with enormous market potential. "New" nutraceuticals made from plants are probably going to be a crucial part of diets that prevent disease. It is anticipated that phytochemical-enriched functional foods will establish themselves as a major standard in one of the most significant functional food market segments.

CONCLUSION

The market for functional foods has grown rapidly due to growing consumer demand for healthier foods that improve physical and mental well-being and help prevent diseases linked to nutrition. Because they contain phytonutrients, fruits and vegetables with vibrant colors reflect their health benefits. Because they are naturally occurring sources of compounds that promote health, phytochemicals hold great promise for creating fortified foods that are enhanced with these useful components. However, to direct the production of food products containing bioactive compounds that can effectively support and maintain health, a great deal of research and epidemiological studies are required.

REFERENCES

[1]. Aggarwal, D., Sabikhi, L., & Sathish Kumar, M. H. (2016). Formulation of reduced calorie biscuits using artificial sweeteners and fat replacer with dairy-multigrain approach. *NFS Journal,* 2, 1–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nfs.2015.10.001

[2]. Albert Zumbe, A., Lee, A., & Storey, D. (2001). Polyols in confectionery: The route to sugar-free, reduced sugar and reduced calorie confectionery. *British Journal of Nutrition,* 85, S31–S45.

[3]. Alok, R., Sharavan, R., Gupta, N., Itishree, K., Wright, S., Srivastava, S., Das, H., Srivastava, S., Prasad, S., & Srivastava, S. K. (2019). Role of phytochemicals in cancer prevention. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences,* 20(20), 4981. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20204981

[4]. Amany, A., Mina, T., Mohamed, H., & Mamdouh, T. E.-D. (2019). Hypocholesterolemic effect of saponin extracts in experimental animals. *Journal of Agricultural Sciences,* 26(6), 2463–2478.

[5]. Amin, M. K. (2018). Probiotics and prebiotics as functional foods: State of art. *Agricultural Research and Technology,* 13(3), 68–69.

[6]. Antonella, D. S., Annabella, V., & Di Giacomo, S. (2020). Plant-derived nutraceuticals and immune system modulation: *An evidence-based overview. Vaccines,* 8, 468. https://doi.org/10.3390/vaccines8030468

[7]. Behera, S. S., & Panda, S. K. (2020). Ethnic and industrial probiotic foods and beverages: Efficacy and acceptance. *Current Opinion in Food Science,* 32, 29–36.

[8]. Berger, M. M., & Shenkin, A. (2006). Vitamins and trace elements: Practical aspects of supplementation. *Nutrition (Burbank, Los Angeles County, Calif.),* 22, 952–955.

[9]. Bhat, Z. F., & Bhat, H. (2011). Functional meat products: *A review. International Journal of Meat Science,* 1(1), 1–14.

[10]. Cao, Y., Sun, Y., Zou, S., Li, M., & Xu, X. (2017). Orally administered baker's yeast β-glucan promotes glucose and lipid homeostasis in the livers of obesity and diabetes model mice. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry,* 65, 9665–9674.

[11]. Chandrasekara, A., & Shahidi, F. (2018). Herbal beverages: Bioactive compounds and their role in disease risk reduction. *A review. Journal of Traditional and Complementary Medicine*, 8, 451–458.

[12]. Charu, G., & Dhan, P. (2014). Phytonutrients as therapeutic agents. *Journal of Complementary and Integrative Medicine*, 11(3), 151–169.

[13]. Chiow, K., Phoon, M., Putti, T., Tan, B. K., & Chow, V. T. (2016). Evaluation of antiviral activities of Houttuynia cordata Thunb. extract, quercetin, quercetrin and cinanserin on murine coronavirus and dengue virus infection. *Asian Pacific Journal of Tropical Medicine,* 9(1),1–7.

[14]. Choung, M. G., Baek, I. Y., Kang, S. T., & Han, W. Y. (2001). Isolation and determination of anthocyanins in seed coats of black soybean (Glycine max (L.) Merr.). *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 49, 5848–5851.

[15]. Daniela, I. I., Eugenia, M. P., Alina, G. P., & Camelia, V. (2018). *Fermented functional beverages in Functional Foods* (pp. 1–15).

[16]. Deepak, M., & Sheweta, B. (2019). Dairy-based functional beverages. *In The Science of Beverages* (Vol. 9, pp. 67–93).

[17]. Duduku, K., Rosalam, S., & Awang, B. (2007). Phytochemical antioxidants for health and medicine—A move towards nature. *Biotechnology and Molecular Biology Review*, 1(4), 97–104.

[18]. Evans, G. H., James, L. J., Shirreffs, S. M., & Maughan, R. J. (2017). Optimizing the restoration and maintenance of fluid balance after exercise-induced dehydration. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 122, 945–951.

[19]. Fakhri, S., Nouri, Z., Moradi, S. Z., & Farzaei, M. H. (2020). Astaxanthin, COVID-19 and immune response: Focus on oxidative stress, apoptosis and autophagy. *Phytotherapy Research.* https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.6797

[20]. Firdous, S. M. (2014). Phytochemicals for treatment of diabetes. *EXCLI Journal,* 13, 451–453.

[21]. Genet, A. G., Yared, G. D., & Nigisty, A. N. (2019). Clinical study on antidiabetic effect of fenugreek seed powder solution (*Trigonella foenum-graecum L.*) on hyperlipidemia in diabetic patients. *Journal of Diabetes Research*, 2019, 1–8.

[22]. Giles, D., & Wei, H. (1997). Effect of structurally related flavones/isoflavones on hydrogen peroxide production and oxidative DNA damage in phorbol ester-stimulated HL-60 cells. *Nutrition and Cancer*, 29, 77–82.

[23]. Giovane, A., & Napoli, C. (2010). Protective effects of food on cardiovascular disease. In H. Sauer *et al.* (Eds.), Studies on cardiovascular disorders (Ch. 24). *USA: Humana Press (Springer).*

[24]. Haggag, Y. A., El-Ashmawy, N. E., & Okasha, K. M. (2020). Is hesperidin essential for prophylaxis and treatment of COVID-19 infection? *Medical Hypotheses,* 144, 109957.

[25]. Hasler, C. M. (1996). Functional foods: The Western perspective. *Nutrition Reviews,* 54, S6–S10.

[26]. Hayek, M. G. (2000). Dietary vitamin E improves immune function in cats. *Recent Advances in Canine and Feline Nutrition, Iams Nutrition Symposium Proceedings.*

[27]. Hollman, P. C. H. (2001). Evidence for health effects of plant phenols: Local or systemic effects. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture,* 81, 842–852.

[28]. Hye-Ji, S., Kyung-A, H., & Kyung-Chul, C. (2019). Antitumor effect of various phytochemicals on diverse types of thyroid cancers. *Nutrients,* 11(1), 125–129.

[29]. Irene, D. (2019). An overview of functional beverages. *In The Science of Beverages* (Vol. 11, pp. 1–40).

[30]. Irina, F. G. M., Daniela, E. G. F., & Vivian, M. C. (2019). Secondary metabolites in plants: Main classes, phytochemical analysis and pharmacological activities. *Bionutra Journal,* 4(4), 1000–1009.

[31]. Jaime, L. C., Peter, Z., & Carla, G. T. (2015). Efficacy of flavonoids in the management of high blood pressure. *National Library of Medicine*, 73(12), 799–822.

[32]. Jim, S., & Edward, C. (2010). Functional food product development. *Wiley-Blackwell Publications.*

[33]. Kolakowski, A., Domiszewski, Z., & Bienkiewicz, G. (2006). Effect of biological and technological factors on the utility of fish as a source of n-3 PUFA. *In Omega-3 Fatty Acid Research* (pp. 83–107).

[34]. Kumar, G. P., & Khanum, F. (2012). Neuroprotective potential of phytochemicals. *Pharmacognosy Reviews,* 6(12), 81–90.

[35]. Kumar, S., & Andy, A. (2012). Health-promoting bioactive chemicals from Brassica. *International Food Research Journal,* 19, 141–152.

[36]. Lee, J. G., Yon, J. M., Lin, C., Jung, A. Y., Jung, K. Y., & Nam, S. Y. (2012). Combined treatment with capsaicin and resveratrol enhances neuroprotection against glutamate-induced toxicity in mouse cerebral cortical neurons. *Food and Chemical Toxicology,* 50(11), 3877–3885.

[37]. London, C. J. (2008). Are nutraceuticals the next big thing in animal biotechnology? Engormix. Retrieved from http://www.engormix.com/e

[38]. Maria, R. C., Antonio, B., Leonardo, P., Francesco, P. C., & Milena, S. (2014). Functional beverages: The emerging side of functional foods. *Comprehensive Reviews in Food Science and Food Safety*, 13(6), 1192–1206.

[39]. Mario, A. T.-V., Zoe, P. M., Juan, E. S.-H., Anaberta, C.-M., Ernesto, S., Elda, M. M.-M., Hafiz, M. N. I., & Roberto, P.-S. (2022). Nephroprotective plants*: A review on the use in pre-renal and post-renal diseases. Plants*, 11, 818.

[40]. Mengjie, K., Kang, X., Minghui, L., Jufei, L., Jianyu, Y., Kaixuan, Y., Xiaoqin, W., Ying, X., & Dewei, Y. (2021). Anti-inflammatory phytochemicals for the treatment of diabetes and

its complications: Lessons learned and future promise. *Biomedicine & Pharmacotherapy,* 133, 110975. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2020.110975

[41]. Merve, B., Nursen, B., & Basaran, A. A. (2017). Lycopene: Is it beneficial to human health as an antioxidant? *Turkish Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 14(3), 311–318.

[42]. Mildner-Szkudlarz, S., Bajerska, J., Zawirska-Wojtasiak, R., & Gorecka, D. (2013). White grape pomace as a source of dietary fibre and polyphenols and its effect on physical and nutraceutical characteristics of wheat biscuit. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, 93(2), 389–395. https://doi.org/10.1002/jsfa.5774.

[43]. Mohammad, B. M. S. F., Gholamreza, B., Maryam, N., Mohammad, H. F., & Javier, E. (2021). Alkaloids as potential phytochemicals against SARS-CoV-2: Approaches to the associated pivotal mechanisms. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2021, 1–21.

[44]. Monica, B., & Ioan, S. (2019). Functional food. *International Journal of Nutrition,* 3(3), 7–16.

[45]. Nadjib, B. M. (2020). Effective antiviral activity of essential oils and their characteristic terpenes against coronaviruses: *An update. Journal of Pharmacology and Clinical Toxicology,* 8(1), 1138.

[46]. Niharika, C., Krishnamoorthy, H., Garry, D., & Saurabh, J. S. (2014). Fruit-based functional beverages: Properties and health benefits.

[47]. Nyamai, D. W., Arika, W., Ogola, P. E., Njagi, E. N. M., & Ngugi, M. P. (2016). Medicinally important phytochemicals: An untapped research avenue. *Journal of Reinforced Plastics and Composites,* 4(1), 35–49.

[48]. Ozaifa, K., Tabasum, A., Lateef, A. D., & Suhail, A. M. (2022). Positive health benefits of saponins from edible legumes: Phytochemistry and pharmacology. *ResearchGate.* https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4959-2_8

[49]. Ozaki, Y., Ayano, S., Inaba, N., Miyake, M., Berhow, M. A., & Hasegawa, S. (1995). Limonoid glucosides in fruit, juice, and processing by-products of satsuma mandarin *(Citrus unshiu Marcov). Journal of Food Science*, 60, 186–189.

[50]. Paiva, S., & Russell, R. (1999). Beta carotene and other carotenoids as antioxidants. *Journal of the American College of Nutrition,* 18, 426–433.

[51]. Panche, A. N., Diwan, A. D., & Chandra, S. R. (2016). Flavonoids: *An overview. Journal of Nutritional Science.* https://doi.org/10.1017/jns.2016.41

[52]. Parakh, B., Bushra, P., Sultan, Z., Gaurav, G., Rabea, P., Mohammad, A. K., Anuja, K., Mohd, S., & Sayeed, A. (2022). Potential nephroprotective phytochemicals: Mechanism and future prospects. *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, 283, 114743.

[53]. Pathan, S. B., Gujjula, M., Senthilkumar, R., Buddolla, V., Meerza, A. R., & Vanitha, V. (2017). Probiotics as functional foods: Potential effects on human health and its impact on

neurological diseases. *International Journal of Nutrition, Pharmacology, Neurological Diseases,* 7(2), 23–33.

[54]. Patrick, E. A., & Isaac, U. A. (2018). Mechanism of actions of some bioactive anti-diabetic principles from phytochemicals of medicinal plants: A review. *Indian Journal of Natural Products and Resources,* 9(2), 85–96.

[55]. Pawlosky, R. J., Hibbeln, J. R., Novotny, J. A., & Salem, N., Jr. (2001). Physiological compartmental analysis of alpha-linolenic acid metabolism in adult humans. *Journal of Lipid Research,* 42, 1257–1265.

[56]. Peter, H. J., MacDougall, D. E., Ntanios, F. Y., & Catherine, A. V. (1997). Dietary phytosterols as cholesterol-lowering agents in humans. *Canadian Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology*, 75(3), 217–227.

[57]. Prakash, D., & Gupta, C. (2011). Role of phytoestrogens as nutraceuticals in human health. *Pharmacology Online,* 510–523.

[58]. Ramirez-Jiménez, A. K., Reynoso-Camacho, R., Elizabeth, T. M., León-Galván, F., & Loarca-Piña, G. (2015). Potential role of bioactive compounds of Phaseolus vulgaris L. on lipid-lowering mechanisms. *Food Research International,* 76, 92–104.

[59]. Remya, D. R., & Minnie, S. (2020). Scope of phytochemicals in the management of COVID-19. *Pharmaceutical Resonance,* 3(1), 26–29.

[60]. Robert, F. G. (2009). Basics in clinical nutrition: Immunonutrition – which influence immunity. *e-SPEN, the European e-Journal of Clinical Nutrition and Metabolism,* 4, 10–13.

[61]. Rose, T. (2007). Vitamins and minerals: How to get the nutrients your body needs. *Bounty Books.*

[62]. Ryu, Y. B., Jeong, H. J., Kim, J. H., Kim, Y. M., Park, J.-Y., & Kim, D. (2010). Biflavonoids from *Torreya nucifera* displaying SARS-CoV 3CLpro inhibition. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry,* 18(22), 7940–7947.

[63]. Schwarz, S., Sauter, D., Wang, K., Zhang, R., Sun, B., & Karioti, A. (2014). Kaempferol derivatives as antiviral drugs against the 3a channel protein of coronavirus. *Planta Medica, 80* (2–3), 177–182.

[64]. Scott, M. G., & Gloria, L. V. (2022). Causes of high blood cholesterol. *Research Advances Series,* 412–427.

[65]. Sanja, O. Z., & Asima, A. (2021). Flour-based confectionery as functional food. *In Functional Foods*. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.95876

[66]. Shruti, M., Vivek, K., Geeta, B., & Abhinandan, M. (2022). Immunomodulatory potential of phytochemicals and other bioactive compounds of fruits: *A review. Food Frontiers.* https://doi.org/10.1002/fft2.129

[67]. Simran, A., & Suvartan, R. (2019). Phytochemicals: Benefits, concerns and challenges. *In Advancement in Functional Food Ingredients* (pp. 205–227).

[68]. Slavin, J. L. (2013). Carbohydrates, dietary fiber and resistant starch in white vegetables: Links to health outcomes. *Advances in Nutrition,* 4(3), 351S–15S.

[69]. Stefania, O., Esther, I., Ersilia, N., Andreina, A., Armando, C., Rita, P., Aurora, D., Pasqualina, B., & Annamaria, M. (2018). Role of functional beverages on sport performance and recovery. *Nutrients,* 10(10), 1470–1491.

[70]. Switi, B. G., Krishna, M. G., & Sandhya, R. M. (2014). Phytochemicals for diabetes management. *Pharmaceutical Crops,* 5, 11–28.

[71]. Tanwar, B. (2012). Flavonoids: Dietary occurrence and health benefits. Spatula DD, 2(1), 59–68.

[72]. Tholl, D. (2006). Terpene synthases and the regulation, diversity and biological roles of terpene metabolism. *Current Opinion in Plant Biology,* 9(3), 297–304.

[73]. Thuy, B. T. P., My, T. T. A., Hai, N. T. T., Hieu, L. T., Hoa, T. T., Thi, P. L. H., Triet, N. T., Anh, T. T. V., Quy, P. T., Tat, P. V., Hue, N. V., Quang, D. T., Trung, N. T., Tung, V. T., Huynh, L. K., & Nhung, N. T. A. (2020). Investigation into SARS-CoV-2 resistance of compounds in garlic essential oil. *ACS Omega,* 5(14), 8312–8320.

[74]. Turner, L. (2007). Putting out the fire: 10 foods to fight inflammation. *Better Nutrition Magazine.*

[75]. Ukwuani, A. N., Abubakar, M. G., Hassan, S. W., & Agaie, B. M. (2013). Antinociceptive activity of hydromethanolic extract of some medicinal plants in mice. *International Journal of Pharmacy Photon,* 104, 120–125.

[76]. Valenzano, D. R., Terzibasi, E., Genade, T., Cattaneo, A., Domenici, L., & Cellerino, A. (2006). Resveratrol prolongs lifespan and retards the onset of age-related markers in a short-lived vertebrate. *Current Biology,* 16(3), 296–300.

[77]. Venugopal, P. M., & Adluri, R. S. (2007). Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties of curcumin. *National Library of Medicine,* 595, 105–125.

[78]. Wahedi, H. M., Ahmad, S., & Abbasi, S. W. (2020). Stilbene-based natural compounds as promising drug candidates against COVID-19. *Journal of Biomolecular Structure and Dynamics*, 1–10.

[79]. Yu, M.-S., Lee, J., Lee, J. M., Kim, Y., Chin, Y.-W., & Jee, J.-G. (2012). Identification of myricetin and scutellarein as novel chemical inhibitors of the SARS coronavirus helicase. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 22(12), 4049–4054.

[80]. Zhang, Y.-J., Gan, R.-Y., Li, S., Zhou, Y., Li, A.-N., Xu, D.-P., & Li, H.-B. (2015). Antioxidant phytochemicals for the prevention and treatment of chronic diseases. *Molecules* (Basel, Switzerland), 20(12), 21138–21156.

[81]. Zhaohui, X., Ru, W., Wancong, Y., & Xiaohong, K. (2017). Cholesterol-lowering mechanisms of phytochemicals: *A review. Current Topics in Nutraceutical Research,* 15(3).

Chapter
8

CLASSIFICATION OF THE PLANT BIOACTIVE COMPOUNDS

ANAND CHAURASIA[1] AND SURJEET SINGH JAT[2]

[1]Department of Botany, PMCoE Chhatrasal Govt. P. G. College Panna (MP) India
[2]Department of Zoology, PMCoE KSCSK Govt. P. G. College Alirajpur (MP) India
Corresponding author E-mail: anandchaurasia@mp.gov.in, dranand003@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

The Plant Bioactive Compounds (PBCs) are natural, non-essential chemicals found in small amounts in plants that can have a positive effect on human and animal health. Also known as phytochemicals or secondary metabolites, these compounds are not necessary for the plant's growth or survival but are involved in important functions like defence against pests and diseases, signalling, and attracting pollinators. The PBCs are essential for human health due to their multiple biological effects, e. g. antipyretic, antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antiallergenic, anti-inflammatory, antimutagenic, and antimicrobial activities, which can have beneficial effects on various NCDs (Noncommunicable diseases), e.g. autoimmune, inflammatory, cardiovascular, cancer, metabolic, and neurodegenerative diseases. Identifying these components and establishing their positive health effects are extremely popular activities of scientific inquiry. The screening of natural sources for novel biologically active metabolites has been an essential part of several drug discovery programs. These PBCs play an important role in the prevention of multiple pathologies. Some of them decrease the risk of numerous diseases e.g. cancer, diabetes, and Alzheimer's dementia, due to their robust antioxidant activity, whereas others stimulate defence mechanisms, thereby enhancing the response to oxidative stress and preventing widespread damage.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemicals, Anti-oxidant, Anti-inflammatory, Macronutrients and Micronutrients.

INTRODUCTION

The Plant Bioactive Compounds are natural chemicals found in plants that can promote health through various effects like anti-oxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anti-microbial activities. They are broadly classified into groups like phenolics, terpenoids, alkaloids, and saponins. These compounds are vital for plants to defend against pathogens and stressors and are present in many foods, including fruits, vegetables, nuts, and grains.

HISTORICAL REVIEW

Ancient uses: The use of plants for medicinal purposes dates back to ancient civilizations. Early herbalists documented the importance of certain plant compounds, often relying on trial and error to identify those with advantageous effects.

18th and 19th centuries: The scientific study of secondary metabolites began to flourish during this period. Botanists and chemists started isolating and characterizing compounds like alkaloids (e.g. Morphine from Opium poppy) and glycosides.

20th-century advances: With the development of modern chemistry and analytical techniques, researchers were able to isolate, purify, and study the structure and function of various secondary metabolites. This era saw noteworthy discoveries, such as the identification of flavonoids, terpenoids, and tannins.

Ethnopharmacology: The late 20th century emphasized the significance of traditional knowledge and practices in identifying plant secondary metabolites with medicinal properties. This led to a revival in the study of natural products and their pharmacological effects.

Biotechnology and synthetic biology: In recent decades, advances in biotechnology have permitted for the genetic manipulation of plants to boost the production of valuable secondary metabolites. Techniques such as metabolic engineering and synthetic biology have opened new avenues for producing compounds like artemisinin (used in malaria treatment).

CLASSIFICATION OF BIOACTIVE COMPOUNDS

Bioactive compounds can be classified in different ways, most commonly by their nutritional importance and their chemical structure. Many are derived from natural sources, such as plants, animals, and microorganisms, and offer health benefits beyond basic nutrition.

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON NUTRITIONAL VALUE

Bioactive compounds are broadly categorized based on whether they provide nutritional value to the body.

Nutritive compounds: These are essential macronutrients and micronutrients that also exhibit biological activity. Examples include:

Proteins and peptides: Some peptides derived from proteins, such as collagen peptides or those in fermented foods, offer health benefits beyond simple amino acid supply.

Lipids: This group includes fatty acids, phospholipids, and sterols, which can be essential for human health Omega-3 fatty acids, found in fish and seeds have anti-inflammatory and cardiovascular benefits.

Vitamins and minerals: Essential for healthy body function, many also provide unique physiological effects. While some are considered primary nutrients, many plants are rich sources of vitamins and minerals that have bioactive function

Non-nutritive compounds: Also known as phytochemicals or secondary metabolites, these compounds are not essential for life but have significant health-promoting effects. They are a major focus of research in nutrition and medicine.

Classification of the Plant Bioactive Compounds

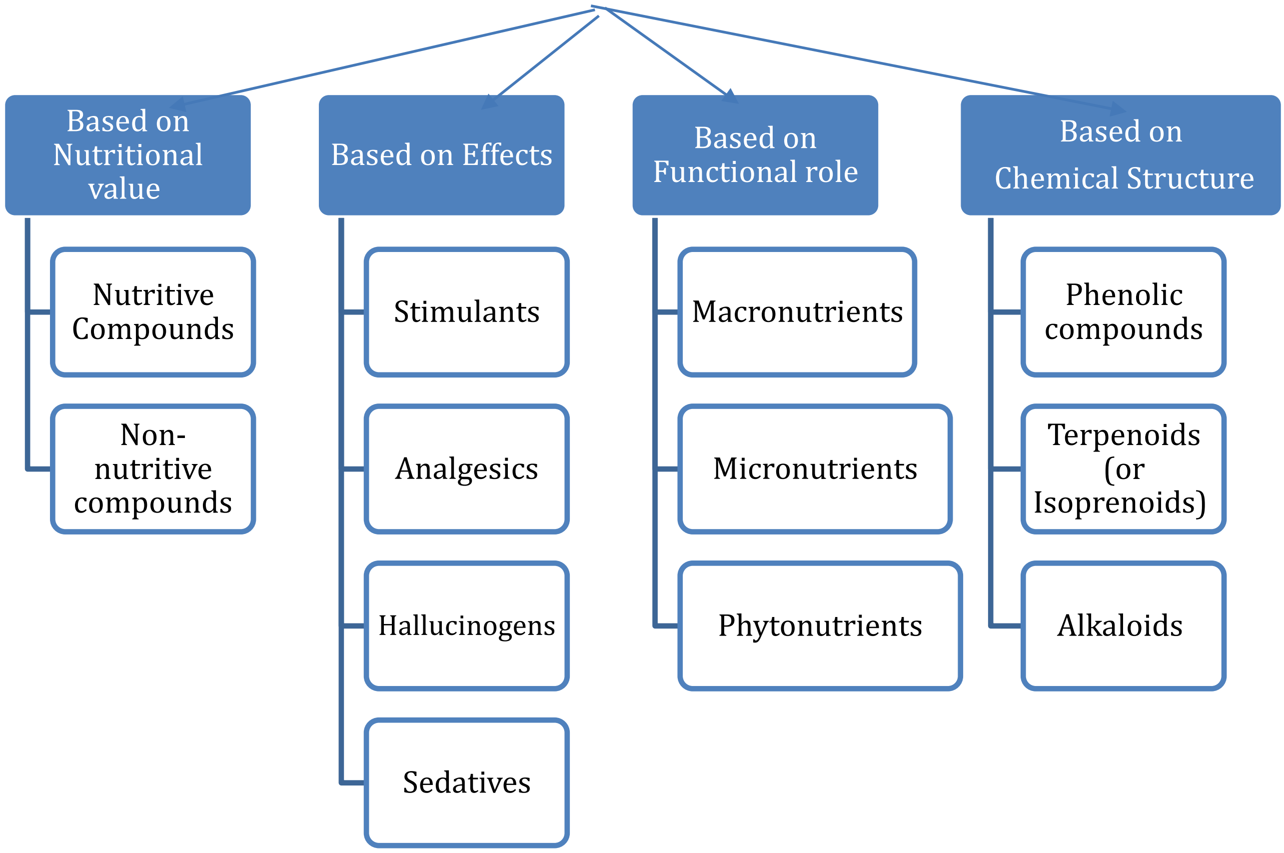


Figure 1: Flow diagram of Classification of Bioactive compounds

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON EFFECTS

Stimulants: Increase alertness and energy (e.g. Caffeine and Nicotine).

Analgesics: Provide pain relief (e.g. Morphine and Oxycodone).

Hallucinogens: Alter perception (e.g. Psilocybin from Mushrooms).

Sedatives: Induce calmness or sleep (e.g. Morphine and Codeine).

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON FUNCTIONAL ROLE

Macronutrients: Essential nutrients required in large amounts, including bioactive proteins and lipids.

Micronutrients: Vitamins and minerals that is essential for health.

Phytonutrients: Plant-derived compounds, often referred to as phytochemicals that have beneficial effects on human health and can be further classified into groups like phenolics and carotenoids.

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON CHEMICAL STRUCTURE

This is the most detailed method of classification, grouping compounds with similar chemical backbones.

PHENOLIC COMPOUNDS

A large and diverse group of phytochemicals characterized by aromatic rings that contains one or more hydroxyl groups. The Subgroups including flavonoids, phenolic acids and anthocyanins. They have strong antioxidant properties, anti-inflammatory properties and are found in many fruits, vegetables, and beverages.

FLAVONOIDS

The flavonoids are the most active phytochemicals as they modulate the function of 17 protein targets and present a high structural similarity to antidiabetic drugs. Their antidiabetic effects are linked with three mechanisms of action, namely:

(i) The regulation of insulin secretion/sensitivity,

(ii) The regulation of glucose metabolism, and

(iii) The regulation of lipid metabolism.

Molecular docking studies reveal that the Swingle can be a potential source of natural products due to its antibiotic-potentiating activity and since it is anti-SARS-CoV-2. The most consumed polyphenols in the human diet, with a characteristic C6-C3-C6 backbone.

Flavonols: Examples include quercetin and kaempferol.

Flavones: Examples include luteolin and apigenin.

Flavanones: Found abundantly in citrus fruits, such as hesperidin and naringenin.

Flavanols: Includes monomeric catechins (like those in tea) and polymeric proanthocyanidins (tannins).

Anthocyanidins: Responsible for red, purple, and blue pigments in fruits and vegetables. When bound to sugar, they are called anthocyanins.

Isoflavones: Found almost exclusively in legumes like soy, with structures similar to estrogen.

NON-FLAVONOIDS

Phenolic acids: Examples include gallic acid and ferulic acid.

Stilbenes: Include resveratrol, found in grapes and wine.

Lignans: Found in seeds, grains, and nuts.

Tannins: Water-soluble polyphenols that can be condensed or hydrolyzable.

TERPENOIDS (OR ISOPRENOIDS)

These are the largest group of secondary metabolites of plants, consisting of repeating isoprene units. They are responsible for the aroma of many plants and include:

Carotenoids: Such as β-carotene and lycopene, found in carrots and tomatoes, respectively.

Non-carotenoids: Include limonene (in citrus), saponins (in legumes like ginseng), and phytosterols (in vegetable oils).

Triterpenes: Compounds like squalene from olive oil.

ALKALOIDS

A diverse group of nitrogen-containing naturally occurring compounds that have significant pharmacological activity. This group of compounds contains at least one nitrogen atom in a heterocyclic ring and can have potent physiological effects. Some have been used as therapeutic agents, such as chemotherapeutics derived from plants like Vinca rosea, Coffee (Caffeine), Tobacco (Nicotine), Poppy (Morphine) etc.

OTHER IMPORTANT CLASSES

Glucosinolates: Found mainly in cruciferous vegetables like broccoli and cabbage. When the plant is damaged, they are hydrolyzed into isothiocyanates (e.g., sulforaphane).

Microbiome regulators: Includes compounds that affect the human gut microbiota.

Probiotics: Live microorganisms that provide a health benefit when consumed.

Prebiotics: Nondigestible substrates that selectively stimulate the growth or activity of beneficial bacteria, such as dietary fiber.

Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs): Essential fatty acids, particularly omega-3 and omega-6, which play a role in cardiovascular and brain health.

Phytosterols: Plant compounds similar in structure to cholesterol that can help lower LDL cholesterol.

Capsaicinoids: Compounds like capsaicin, which gives chili peppers their spiciness.

Polysaccharides: The long chains of sugars, including many types of dietary fibers and other complex carbohydrates found in plants that can have bioactive properties with health benefit.

Glycosides: The compounds made of a sugar and a non-sugar molecule (Aglycone). They are important in medicine as well as in nutrition. (Compounds where a sugar is bound to another functional group, such as an alcohol).

HEALTH BENEFITS AND FUNCTIONS

Antioxidant: Protect the body from damage caused by free radicals.

Anti-inflammatory: Help reduce inflammation.

Antimicrobial: Fight against bacteria, fungi, and viruses.

Anticancer and Anticarcinogenic: Help prevent or inhibit cancer cell growth.

Cardioprotective: Support heart health.

Neuroprotective: Protect against neurodegenerative diseases.

Immunomodulatory: Help regulate the immune system.

PLANT FUNCTIONS AND SOURCES

Plant Defense: Bioactive compounds are crucial for plants to defend themselves against herbivores, pathogens, and other environmental stressors.

Food sources: They are abundant in foods such as fruits, vegetables, nuts, whole grains, seeds, and legumes.

CONCLUSION

In recent decades, bioactive compounds from natural sources have attracted substantial attention and have been subjected to extensive research due to their antioxidant properties and their use potential in the promotion of health and the prevention of disease.

REFERENCES

[1]. Constantin Apetrei, (2016). *Bentham Science Publishers*. "Natural Sources, Physicochemical Characterization and Applications". 2016

[2]. Dilipkumar Pal and Amit Kumar Nayak, (2020). "Bioactive Natural Products for Pharmaceutical Applications". *Springer International Publishing*.2020

[3]. Goulas V., Banegas-Luna A.J., Constantinou A., Pérez-Sánchez H., Barbouti A. (2022). Computation screening of multi-target antidiabetic properties of phytochemicals in common edible mediterranean plants. Plants. 2022;11:1637. doi: 10.3390/ plants11131637.

[4]. *International Journal of Advanced Biochemistry Research*. (2023). "Bioactive compounds from plants and animals: A review". 2023

[5]. *National Institutes of Health (NIH). (2023).* "Recent Advances in Health Benefits of Bioactive Compounds from Agri-Food Wastes and By-Products". 2023

[6]. Zulkipli M., Mahbub N., Fatima A., Wan-Lin S.L., Khoo T.-J., Mahboob T., Rajagopal M., Samudi C., Kathirvalu G., Abdullah N.H., *et al.* (2022). Isolation and characterization of werneria chromene and dihydroxyacidissimol from Burkillanthus malaccensis (Ridl.) swingle. Plants. 2022;11:1388. doi: 10.3390/plants11111388.

Chapter
9

CLASSIFICATION OF PLANT BIOACTIVE COMPOUNDS

GAVIRAJ E. N*, SANTOSH R KARAJGI,
NANJAPPAIAH H.M, SANTOSH R AWASTI

BLDEA's SSM College of Pharmacy and Research Centre,
BLDE DU Campus, Vijayapur-586103, Karnatka, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: ssmcop.gavirajen@bldea.org

ABSTRACT

Plants produce a wide range of bioactive compounds that play vital roles in their growth, protection, and adaptation. These secondary metabolites—including fatty acids, terpenes, phenolics, glycosides, and alkaloids—form the chemical basis of natural product chemistry. Fatty acids and glycerides act as energy reserves and structural components, while terpenes show remarkable structural diversity and therapeutic potential. Compounds derived from the shikimic acid pathway, such as phenolics, flavonoids, and coumarins, possess strong antioxidant and antimicrobial activities. Glycosides, such as cardiac and anthraquinone types, are important medicinal agents used for heart and digestive disorders. Alkaloids remain some of the most valuable natural products, known for their pain-relieving, antimalarial, and stimulant effects. Together, these plant-derived compounds reflect nature's chemical creativity and continue to inspire modern drug discovery. Advances in analytical and biotechnological research will further uncover new natural molecules and enhance understanding of their pharmacological importance.

KEYWORDS: Plant Metabolites, Terpenes, Phenolics, Glycosides, Alkaloids, Natural Product Chemistry.

INTRODUCTION

Plants are extraordinary biochemical systems capable of synthesizing an immense variety of organic molecules that sustain life and enable adaptation to diverse ecological environments. These molecules, collectively known as plant metabolites, are broadly classified into primary metabolites, such as carbohydrates, amino acids, lipids, and nucleic acids, and secondary metabolites, which serve specialized ecological and physiological functions (Taiz *et al.*, 2015; Wink, 2010).

Primary metabolites are directly involved in fundamental processes like respiration, photosynthesis, and cell division, while secondary metabolites, though not essential for basic survival, play crucial roles in defense, signaling, and environmental interactions. Nearly 200,000 plant secondary metabolites have been identified, categorized into major classes such as terpenes, phenolics, glycosides, alkaloids, and fatty acid derivatives (Cragg & Newman, 2013).

These natural products act as biochemical mediators, deterring herbivores, inhibiting pathogens, attracting pollinators, and mitigating abiotic stress (Hartmann, 2007). Their significance extends beyond plant physiology; many exhibit potent pharmacological effects and have served as the basis for drug discovery. Classic examples include morphine from *Papaver somniferum*, quinine from *Cinchona* species, and artemisinin from *Artemisia annua*, which revolutionized pain management and antimalarial therapy (Newman & Cragg, 2020).

The following sections present the principal classes of plant bioactive compounds, their chemical characteristics, biological functions, and pharmacological relevance.

FATTY ACIDS AND GLYCERIDES

Fatty acids and their glyceride derivatives are fundamental lipid constituents found throughout the plant kingdom. They form critical structural elements of cellular membranes, act as energy reserves, and contribute to protective coatings such as cuticular waxes. Chemically, these compounds are long-chain carboxylic acids, typically occurring as esters of glycerol known as triglycerides or glycerides (Christie & Han, 2010).

Fatty acids are categorized as saturated or unsaturated depending on the presence of double bonds in their hydrocarbon chains. Saturated fatty acids-such as palmitic (C16:0) and stearic (C18:0) acids provide rigidity to membranes and stability to oils (Fig. 1). In contrast, unsaturated fatty acids**,** including oleic (C18:1) and α-linolenic acid (C18:3)**,** enhance membrane fluidity and serve as precursors for signaling molecules such as prostaglandins (Simopoulos, 2002) (Fig. 1). Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), abundant in linseed and evening primrose oils, play vital roles in cardiovascular health and inflammation modulation (Calder, 2015).

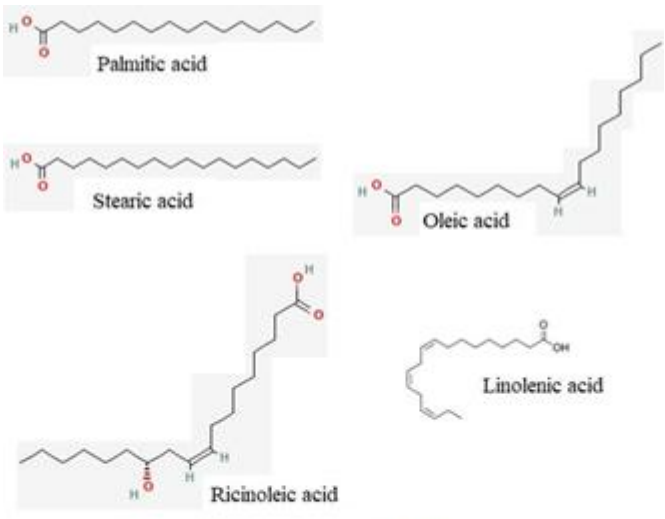


Fig. 1: Common fatty acids

Figure 1: Common Fatty Acids

Among plant-derived oils, castor oil from *Ricinus communis* is notable for its high content of ricinoleic acid (Fig. 1)**,** which imparts unique physicochemical properties used in pharmaceutical, cosmetic, and industrial applications (Berman *et al.,* 2017). Similarly, oils from olive, almond, and coconut serve as emollients and drug carriers, valued for their natural origin and biocompatibility.

Excessive consumption of saturated fats correlates with atherosclerosis and hyperlipidemia, while diets rich in unsaturated fatty acids-particularly omega-3 and omega-6 series-exert cardioprotective effects (Simopoulos, 2008). Thus, fatty acids and glycerides bridge the interface between plant physiology, nutrition, and pharmacognosy.

TERPENES

Terpenes, also known as isoprenoids, constitute one of the most extensive and structurally diverse families of plant secondary metabolites. They are synthesized from simple five-carbon isoprene units—isopentenyl pyrophosphate (IPP) and dimethylallyl pyrophosphate (DMAPP) — which arise from two biosynthetic routes: the mevalonate (MVA) and methylerythritol phosphate (MEP) pathways (Dewick, 2002; Croteau *et al.,* 2000). Sequential condensations of these units yield intermediates such as geranyl pyrophosphate (GPP), farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP), and geranylgeranyl pyrophosphate (GGPP)—the universal precursors of all terpenoid compounds.

Terpenes are grouped by the number of isoprene units:

Monoterpenes (C10) are volatile constituents of essential oils and impart characteristic aromas to plants like *Mentha*, *Eucalyptus*, and *Thymus*. Compounds such as menthol (Fig. 2) and 1, 8-cineole display antimicrobial and expectorant activities.

Sesquiterpenes (C15), derived from FPP, are often less volatile and include pharmacologically significant molecules like artemisinin from *Artemisia annua* (Fig. 2), a potent antimalarial compound that earned global recognition for its therapeutic efficacy (Tu, 2011).

Diterpenes (C20), such as paclitaxel (Taxol®) from *Taxus brevifolia* (Fig. 2), exhibit potent antineoplastic activity through microtubule stabilization, preventing cancer cell division (Kingston, 2011).

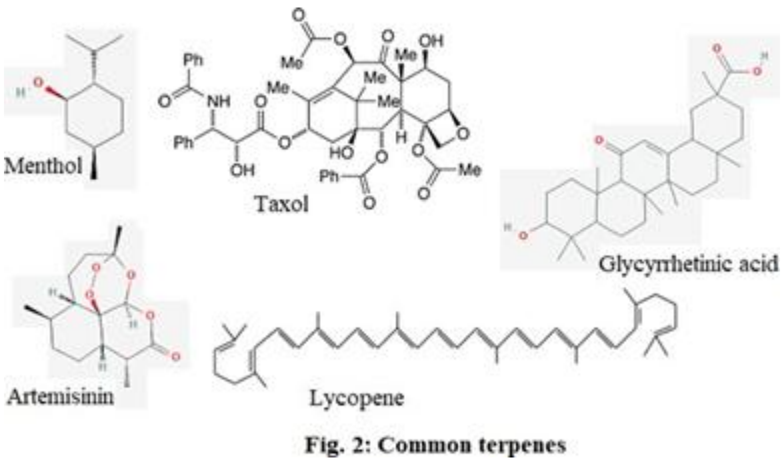


Figure 2: Common Terpenes

Triterpenes (C30) are synthesized via squalene cyclization and give rise to compounds like β-sitosterol, stigmasterol, and glycyrrhetinic acid from licorice (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*) (Fig. 2), known for their anti-inflammatory and antiviral effects.

Tetraterpenes or carotenoids (C40)—including β-carotene and lycopene (Fig. 2)—serve as pigments that aid in photosynthesis and act as antioxidants protecting against oxidative stress (Britton, 1995).

Through enzymatic cyclizations and subsequent functional modifications, terpenes exhibit remarkable structural diversity and biological activity. They are vital in plant defense, attract pollinators, and form the basis of many therapeutic and industrially valuable natural products.

SHIKIMIC ACID–DERIVED NATURAL PRODUCTS

The shikimate pathway serves as a pivotal metabolic route linking carbohydrate metabolism to the biosynthesis of aromatic secondary metabolites. It operates in plastids, converting simple sugars into shikimic acid, which functions as a precursor for numerous phenolic compounds, flavonoids, lignans, tannins, and coumarins (Herrmann & Weaver, 1999; Vogt, 2010). These metabolites are not only central to plant physiology but also critical in pharmacognosy due to their diverse therapeutic effects.

Shikimic acid itself (Fig. 3) has gained industrial importance as a key starting material for the synthesis of the antiviral drug oseltamivir (Tamiflu®). Beyond this role, shikimate derivatives exhibit antioxidant and cytoprotective properties, underscoring their biological significance (Ferreyra *et al.*, 2012).

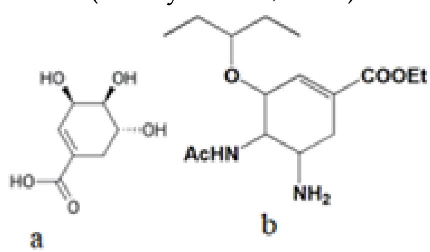


Figure 3: (a) Shikimic acid and (b) Osemeltavir

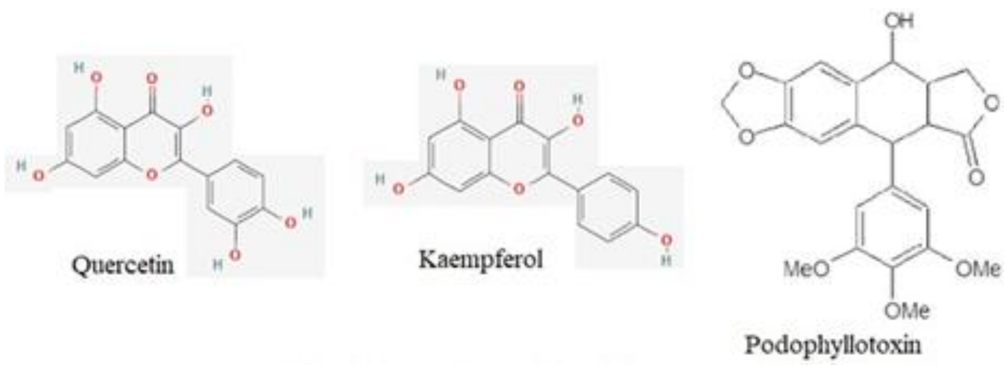


Figure 4: Some flavonoids and lignans

Phenolic compounds, characterized by hydroxylated aromatic rings, act as antioxidants by scavenging reactive oxygen species and stabilizing free radicals. Flavonoids, such as quercetin and kaempferol (Fig. 4), represent the most abundant group, exhibiting anti-inflammatory, cardioprotective, and anticancer activities (Panche *et al.,* 2016). These compounds also contribute to the pigmentation of flowers and fruits, playing ecological roles in pollinator attraction.

Coumarins, typified by a benzopyrone nucleus, occur widely in plants such as *Melilotus officinalis* and *Citrus* species. They display anticoagulant, antimicrobial, and anti-inflammatory activities. Notably, synthetic derivatives like warfarin were developed based on the natural coumarin scaffold (Mishra *et al.*, 2020).

Lignans, including podophyllotoxin (Fig. 4), serve as precursors for anticancer drugs like etoposide, while tannins—high-molecular-weight polyphenols—exhibit astringent, antioxidant, and antimicrobial properties (Scalbert, 1991). Collectively, shikimate-derived natural products form a vast and versatile group of phytochemicals that bridge plant biochemistry with modern therapeutic applications.

GLYCOSIDES

Glycosides represent one of the most structurally diverse and pharmacologically significant classes of plant secondary metabolites. They consist of a sugar component (glycone) linked to a non-sugar aglycone (genin) through a glycosidic bond, which may occur via oxygen (O-glycosides), carbon (C-glycosides), or nitrogen (N-glycosides) atoms (Harborne, 1999). This conjugation enhances solubility and stability, allowing plants to safely store reactive or toxic compounds in inactive forms. Upon tissue damage or enzymatic hydrolysis, the aglycone is released to perform specific biological functions, often related to defense or signaling (Hegnauer, 1989).

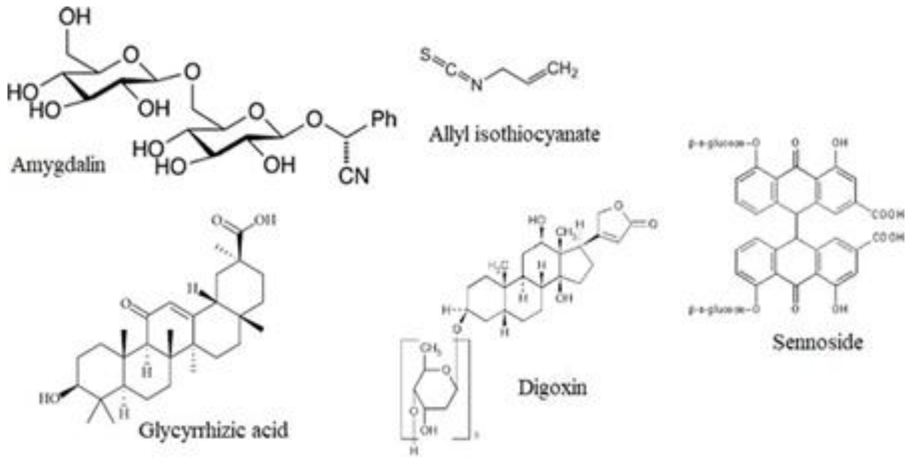


Figure 5: Common glycosides

Cyanogenic glycosides such as amygdalin (Fig. 5) from *Prunus amygdalus* and linamarin from *Manihot esculenta* release hydrogen cyanide upon enzymatic breakdown, serving as effective chemical deterrents against herbivores (Vetter, 2000). Traditional processing methods—soaking, fermenting, or boiling—help detoxify cyanogenic food plants like cassava (Cardoso *et al.*, 2005).

Glucosinolates, abundant in the Brassicaceae family, are sulfur- and nitrogen-containing glycosides that yield biologically active isothiocyanates upon hydrolysis by the enzyme myrosinase**.** Compounds such as allyl isothiocyanate (Fig. 5) from *Brassica nigra* exhibit pungent aroma and potent antimicrobial and anticancer properties (Bones & Rossiter, 2006).

Cardiac glycosides—including digoxin (Fig. 5) and digitoxin from *Digitalis purpurea* and *D. lanata*—are steroidal glycosides that exert powerful effects on the heart by inhibiting the Na^+/K^+-ATPase enzyme. This inhibition increases intracellular calcium, enhancing cardiac contractility and output (Katzung, 2018).

Saponins, which are triterpenoid or steroidal glycosides, are known for their surfactant and foaming properties. Glycyrrhizic acid (Fig. 5) from *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (licorice) exhibits anti-inflammatory, antiviral, and hepatoprotective actions (Shibata, 2000).

Anthraquinone glycosides form another therapeutically important subgroup, primarily used as stimulant laxatives. Sennosides A and B (Fig. 5), derived from *Cassia angustifolia* and *Aloe vera*, enhance intestinal peristalsis and increase fluid secretion, and are also known for their wound-healing and antioxidant properties (Van Gorkom *et al.,* 1999; Hamman, 2008).

Thus, glycosides represent a vital class of bioactive natural products that integrate carbohydrate chemistry with potent physiological effects, forming the chemical foundation for numerous therapeutic agents.

ALKALOIDS

Alkaloids are nitrogen-containing natural products renowned for their structural complexity and profound pharmacological effects. Found across diverse plant families, these compounds typically possess heterocyclic nitrogen atoms derived from amino acids such as tryptophan, tyrosine, ornithine, and lysine (Dewick, 2009; Roberts & Wink, 1998). Alkaloids are basic in nature and often form salts with organic acids, which enhance their solubility and facilitate storage and transport within plant tissues.

These secondary metabolites display a wide range of physiological activities, serving as defense agents against herbivores and pathogens and as potent therapeutic compounds for humans. Historically, alkaloid-rich plants have shaped both traditional medicine and modern pharmacology through their analgesic, antimalarial, stimulant, and antineoplastic properties.

Pyridine and piperidine alkaloids include compounds such as nicotine (Fig. 6) from *Nicotiana tabacum*, a potent stimulant acting on nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (Benowitz, 2010), and coniine from *Conium maculatum*, a neurotoxin historically infamous for its use in the execution of Socrates.

Phenylethylamine alkaloids such as ephedrine (Fig. 6) from *Ephedra sinica* act as sympathomimetic agents, producing bronchodilation and vasoconstriction, while colchicine from *Colchicum autumnale* serves as an antimitotic drug in gout therapy.

Quinoline alkaloids—notably quinine (Fig. 6) and quinidine from *Cinchona* species—represent milestones in antimalarial and antiarrhythmic treatments (Dewick, 2009). These alkaloids inhibit heme polymerization in *Plasmodium* parasites, disrupting their metabolic processes.

Isoquinoline alkaloids such as morphine (Fig. 6) and codeine from *Papaver somniferum* remain the cornerstone of pain management. They act on μ-opioid receptors in the central nervous system, providing potent analgesia (Pert & Snyder, 1973). Derivatives like thebaine serve as precursors for semi-synthetic opioids, while vincristine and vinblastine from *Catharanthus roseus* disrupt microtubule assembly, forming the basis of important chemotherapeutic regimens (Newman & Cragg, 2020).

Indole alkaloids derived from tryptophan, exhibit diverse neuroactive properties. Reserpine (Fig. 6) from *Rauvolfia serpentina* functions as an antihypertensive by depleting catecholamine stores, whereas ergotamine, from *Claviceps purpurea*, is used in migraine therapy. Other examples like psilocybin and harmine demonstrate psychotropic effects and are being revisited in controlled studies for treating depression and PTSD (Roberts & Wink, 1998).

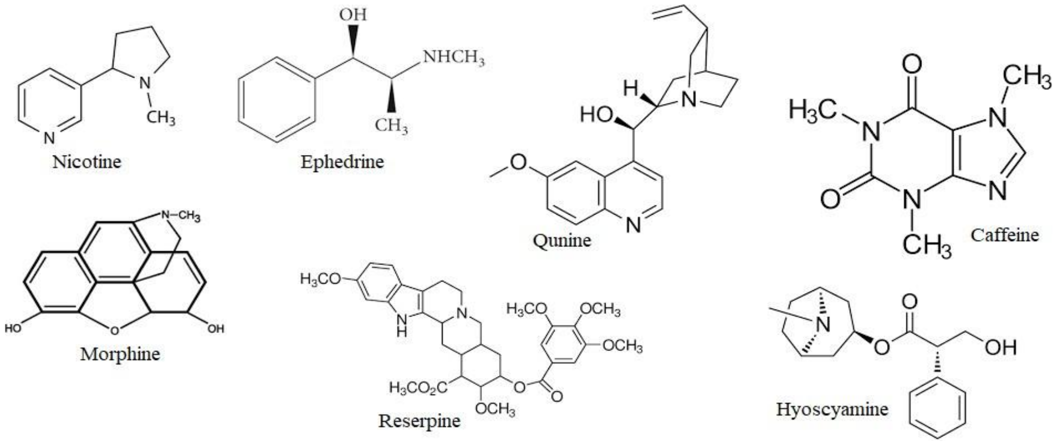


Figure 6: Common alkaloids

Tropane alkaloids, including atropine, hyoscyamine (Fig. 6) and scopolamine, found in *Atropa belladonna* and *Datura stramonium*, exhibit strong anticholinergic activity, reducing glandular secretions and inducing mydriasis (Dewick, 2009). Cocaine, another tropane derivative from *Erythroxylum coca*, serves as both a local anesthetic and a stimulant, although its addictive potential limits therapeutic use.

Finally, xanthine alkaloids—caffeine (Fig. 6), theophylline, and theobromine—are purine derivatives present in tea, coffee, and cocoa. They act as mild central nervous system stimulants and bronchodilators, illustrating the global prevalence and physiological impact of alkaloid consumption.

Together, alkaloids exemplify nature's chemical ingenuity, combining ecological defense with pharmacological power, and continue to inspire new drug discovery and synthesis.

CONCLUSION

Plant bioactive compounds display exceptional chemical diversity, evolved to support plant survival and adaptation. These metabolites—such as lipids, terpenes, phenolics, glycosides, and alkaloids—play key roles in defense, signaling, and stress tolerance, while also serving as valuable sources of medicines. From traditional remedies to modern drugs, natural products like morphine, quinine, digoxin, and artemisinin show the lasting importance of plant chemistry in healthcare. Recent advances in metabolomics, biotechnology, and synthetic biology have enabled the discovery and sustainable production of new bioactive molecules. Future integration of genomics and computational tools will further enhance understanding of plant metabolism and accelerate the development of new therapeutic agents. The study and classification of these compounds thus remain vital for unlocking nature's chemical potential for human benefit.

REFERENCES

[1]. Benowitz, N. L. (2010). *Nicotine addiction. New England Journal of Medicine, 362*(24), 2295–2303.

[2]. Berman, P., Nizri, E., & Aserin, A. (2017). *Ricinoleic acid: A review on its physicochemical and functional characteristics. Industrial Crops and Products, 96*, 10–23.

[3]. Bones, A. M., & Rossiter, J. T. (2006). *The enzymic and chemically induced decomposition of glucosinolates. Phytochemistry, 67*(11), 1053–1067.

[4]. Britton, G. (1995). *Structure and properties of carotenoids in relation to function. FASEB Journal, 9*(15), 1551–1558.

[5]. Calder, P. C. (2015). *Marine omega-3 fatty acids and inflammatory processes. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Molecular and Cell Biology of Lipids, 1851*(4), 469–484.

[6]. Christie, W. W., & Han, X. (2010). *Lipid Analysis: Isolation, Separation, Identification and Lipidomic Analysis* (4th ed.). Woodhead Publishing.

[7]. Cragg, G. M., & Newman, D. J. (2013). *Natural products: A continuing source of novel drug leads. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - General Subjects, 1830*(6), 3670–3695.

[8]. Dewick, P. M. (2009). *Medicinal Natural Products: A Biosynthetic Approach* (3rd ed.). John Wiley & Sons.

[9]. Harborne, J. B. (1999). *Plant Biochemistry.* Academic Press.

[10]. Katzung, B. G. (2018). *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology* (14th ed.). McGraw Hill Education. Kingston.

[11]. D. G. I. (2011). *Taxol and its analogs. Natural Product Reports, 28*(6), 1022–1032.

[12]. Newman, D. J., & Cragg, G. M. (2020). *Natural products as sources of new drugs over the nearly four decades from 01/1981 to 09/2019. Journal of Natural Products, 83*(3), 770–803.

[13]. Panche, A. N., Diwan, A. D., & Chandra, S. R. (2016). *Flavonoids: An overview. Journal of Nutritional Science, 5*, e47.

[14]. Tu, Y. (2011). *The discovery of artemisinin and gifts from Chinese medicine. Nature Medicine, 17*(10), 1217–1220.

[15]. Vetter, J. (2000). *Plant cyanogenic glycosides. Toxicon, 38*(1), 11–36.

Chapter 10

ANTIOXIDANT PHYTOCHEMICALS AND THEIR MECHANISMS

B. THENDRAL HEPSIBHA

Department of Biochemistry, Ethiraj College for Women, Chennai-8, Tamil Nadu, India
Corresponding author E-mail: thendralhepsibha_b@ethirajcollege.edu.in

ABSTRACT

Free radicals are unpaired highly reactive molecules. The imbalance between free radicals and the body's antioxidant potential results in oxidative stress, which leads to pathological conditions. To counteract the toxic effects of free radicals, synthetic antioxidants were supplemented. Because of the low toxicity and fewer side effects, plants have always remained the source of bioactive molecules. Plants contain a plethora of phytoconstituents like polyphenols, alkaloids, lignins, terpenoids, saponins, etc. They have received much attention as antioxidants, as they promote health and prevent diseases. Antioxidants neutralize the free radicals and reduce oxidative stress, thus maintaining cellular function and integrity. Understanding the mechanism by which antioxidants alleviate oxidative stress is essential, which might help in the management of diseases and maintain health.

KEYWORDS: Phytoconstituents, Free Radicals, Polyphenols, Antioxidants, Health, Oxidative Stress.

INTRODUCTION

Free radicals are highly reactive and unstable due to an unpaired electron in their atomic structure. Normal internal metabolic processes, diseases, and exposure to various external stressors, such as radiation, heat stress, pollutants, and drugs, lead to the constant release of reactive substances (oxygen/nitrogen/sulfur species) or free radicals (Table 1). Reactive volatile species include superoxide (O_2^-), singlet oxygen ($^1O_2$), hydroxyl (·OH), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), alkoxy (-OR), peroxyl (ROO·), nitric oxide (•NO), reactive sulphur species when thiol reacts with reactive oxygen species (Krishnamurthy and Wadhwani, 2012) and reactive chlorine species (HClO), $ClNO_2$) (Table 2). These reactive species play a dual role at low concentrations with beneficial vital processes like mitogenesis or apoptosis, redox regulation, and cellular signaling, and at high concentrations, they cause detrimental damage to lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids.

Naturally, under normal conditions, the human system enhances the activities of antioxidant enzymes like superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), and glutathione peroxidase (GPx) or reduces the activities of NAD(P)H oxidase and xanthine oxidase (XO) (Aziz *et al.*, 2019) to neutralize the free radicals.

Table 1: Endogenous and exogenous sources for free radical formation

Mechanism	Source type	Description
Mitochondrial ETC	Endogenous	Leakage of electrons at complexes I and III forming superoxide radicals (O2•–).
NADPH Oxidase	Endogenous	Produces superoxide radicals in immune cells during respiratory burst.
Xanthine Oxidase	Endogenous	Generates superoxide and hydrogen peroxide during purine metabolism, especially under stress.
Nitric Oxide Synthase	Endogenous	Produces nitric oxide (NO•), which can form peroxynitrite (ONOO–) with superoxide.
Lipid Peroxidation	Endogenous	Free radicals abstract hydrogen from polyunsaturated fatty acids, creating lipid radicals and peroxyl radicals.
Cytochrome P450	Endogenous	Leaks electrons to oxygen during metabolism, forming superoxide radicals.
Peroxisomes	Endogenous	Generate hydrogen peroxide through enzymatic actions such as acyl-CoA oxidase.
UV Radiation	Exogenous	Direct ionization causing the formation of ROS such as singlet oxygen and superoxide radicals.
Ionizing Radiation	Exogenous	High-energy particles ionize molecules, creating ROS and extensive cellular damage.
Environmental Pollutants	Exogenous	Cigarette smoke and heavy metals induce ROS through various mechanisms.
Drugs and Chemicals	Exogenous	Agents like doxorubicin and acetaminophen generate ROS as part of their action, causing oxidative stress.
Inflammatory Processes	Exogenous	Activated immune cells produce large amounts of ROS and RNS to combat pathogens.

(Source: Chandimali *et al.*, 2025)

An imbalance between free radicals and antioxidants occurs if the normal scavenging mechanisms are disturbed. The accumulation of free radicals leads to oxidative stress, which contributes to the development of various diseases, ranging from cardiovascular to cancer. Antioxidants can mitigate the free radicals and protect human health. Synthetic antioxidants like butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), butylated hydroxyl anisole (BHA), tertiary butyl hydroquinone (TBHQ), propyl gallate (PG), nordihydroguaiaretic acid (NDGA), and metal chelating agent (EDTA) capture the free radicals and stop the chain reaction. However, the therapeutic limitations of synthetic antioxidants include a single mode of antioxidant activity (Kahkonen *et al.*, 1999), potential side effects (Lin *et al.*, 2016), serving as pro-oxidants at high concentrations, reduced bioavailability, and failing in vivo efficacy (Del Rio *et al.*, 2013). Hence, foods like fruits, vegetables, whole grains, berries, nuts, and seeds, which are rich in antioxidants, have gained attention due to their natural source, wide availability, and therapeutic potential.

Table 2: Different types of free radicals

Reactive oxygen species (ROS)	Hydroxyl radical (•OH), Superoxide radical anion (O2•–), Peroxyl radical (ROO•), Alkoxyl radical (RO•), hydrogen peroxide (H2O2), perhydroxyl radical (HOO•), Singlet oxygen (^{1}O2)
Reactive nitrogen species (RNS)	Nitric oxide (NO•), peroxynitrite anion (ONOO–), nitrous acid (HNO2), nitrogen dioxide (NO2), nitrosyl anion (NO–)
Reactive chlorine species (RCS)	Hypochlorous acid (HClO), nitryl chloride (ClNO2)
Reactive sulfur species (RSS)	Thiyl radical (RS•), hydrogen sulfide (H2S), persulfides (i.e., GSSH, CSSH)

(Source: Jomova *et al.*, 2023)

Plants and plant-derived products are rich in secondary metabolites called phytochemicals. They are grouped based on their structure and functions, with a few, such as carotenoids, phenolic compounds, alkaloids, organosulfur compounds, saponins, and terpenes, exhibiting beneficial therapeutic potential (Figure 1). More than 100,000 phytochemicals were identified (Wallace *et al.*, 2015).

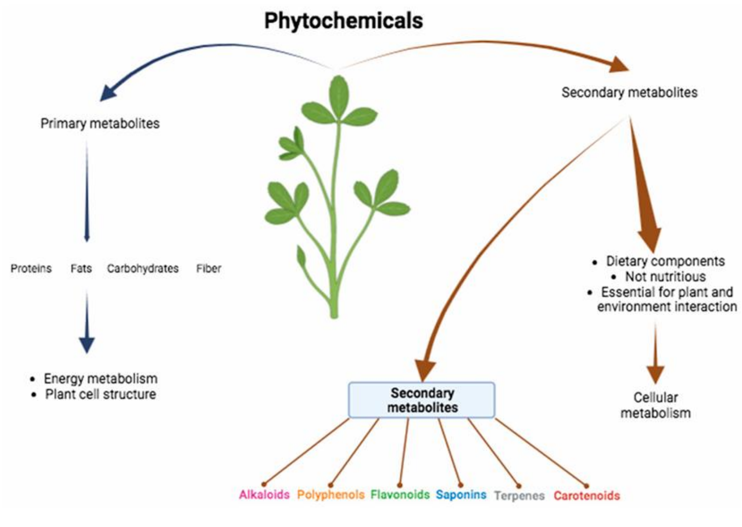


Figure 1: Plant metabolites (Source: Rodríguez *et al.*, 2024)

CAROTENOIDS

Carotenoids are colored pigments (orange, red, yellow) such as lutein, zeaxanthin, and beta-carotene, abundant in fruits and vegetables. Papaya, pumpkin, carrots, cantaloupe, sweet potatoes, winter squash, mango, capsicum, shellfish, and tomatoes are rich in carotene, while pink grapefruit, guava, watermelon, and apricot contain lycopene. Carotenoids prevent oxidative damage by limiting free radical chain reactions (Jomova & Valko, 2013). Their antioxidative effects help prevent atherosclerosis, cancer, age-related macular degeneration, and prostate cancer, while supporting eye health (Skowyra, 2014). The antioxidant property arises from their conjugated double-bond system, which delocalizes unpaired electrons (Mortensen *et al.*, 2001). Carotenoids effectively scavenge reactive species like superoxide ($O_2\cdot^-$), hydroxyl (·OH), peroxyl (ROO·), and others (Rahman, 2007). One β-carotene molecule can deactivate about 1,000 singlet oxygen molecules (Tan *et al.*, 2018). They protect lipid membranes from radical-induced damage by hydrogen or electron transfer and radical addition to the carotenoid structure (El-Agamey *et al.*, 2004).

POLYPHENOLS

Phenolic compounds, over 8000 in number, are major plant phytochemicals with strong antioxidant activity due to hydroxyl groups on aromatic rings. Fruits like lemon, berries, grapes, and oranges, and vegetables such as spinach, onion, carrot, and cabbage are rich sources. Polyphenols are classified into flavonoids, phenolic acids, and tannins. Flavonoids include flavones, flavonols, flavanones, and anthocyanidins, differing in hydroxylation and glycosylation patterns. Even at low concentrations, polyphenols inhibit substrate oxidation and stabilize radicals through hydrogen bonding and delocalization (Chaudhary *et al.*, 2023; Dangles, 2012) (Table 2).

FLAVONOIDS

The antioxidant potential of flavonoids depends on the hydroxyl group position and metal-chelating ability. They donate hydrogen or electrons to radicals and are regenerated by glutathione. The 2, 3-double bonds stabilize radicals (Bors *et al.*, 1995). Flavonoids chelate metals, reducing Fenton reactions and inducing cancer cell apoptosis (Simunkova *et al.*, 2021). Quercetin, found in berries, onions, apples, and broccoli, scavenges hydroxyl and superoxide radicals, inhibits NF-κB–mediated inflammation, and mitigates TNF-α–induced oxidative stress (Al-Zharani *et al.*, 2023; Heeba, 2024). It also regulates cardiac oxidizing proteins and enhances NRF2-mediated antioxidant enzyme and heme oxygenase expression (Ma & He, 2012). Catechins in green tea chelate metals and boost catalase and SOD (Musial *et al.*, 2020). Anthocyanin-rich blueberries elevate glutathione, catalase, SOD, and glutathione peroxidase activities (Chiang *et al.*, 2006; Karthikeyan *et al.*, 2009).

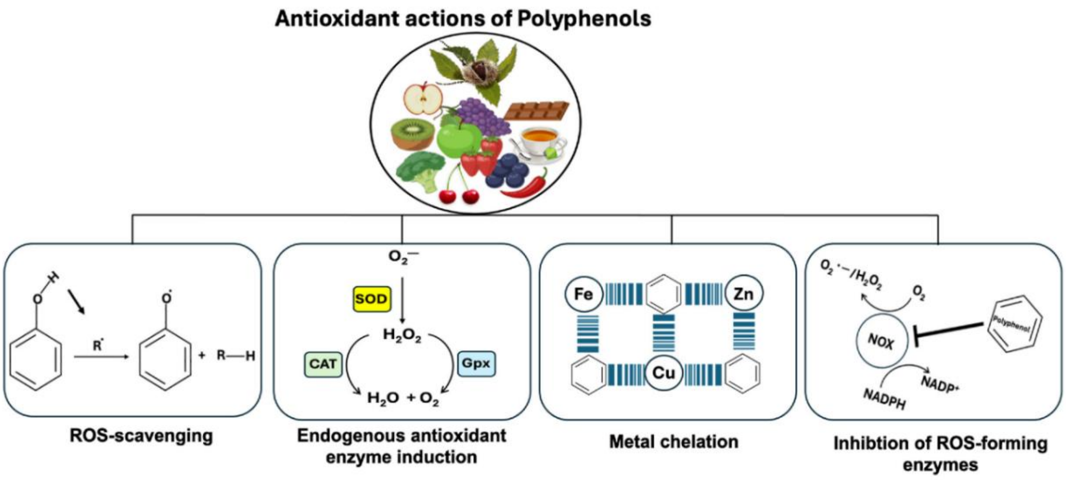


Figure 2: Antioxidant mechanism of Polyphenols

Resveratrol (3, 5, 4′-trihydroxy-trans-stilbene), a stilbene has 2 phenyl moieties joined by a methylene bridge, is abundant in grapes. The three hydroxyl groups are responsible for the antioxidant activity, like chelation of metal ions and free radical neutralization. They increase the expression of antioxidant enzymes by the Nrf2 (nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2) pathway and offer protection from oxidative stress (Lin *et al.*, 2021).

PHENOLIC ACIDS

Phenolic acids include hydroxybenzoic (gallic, syringic, vanillic) and hydroxycinnamic acids (caffeic, ferulic). Hydroxybenzoic acids bind to lignin and tannins, while hydroxycinnamic acids associate with cell wall polysaccharides and glycoproteins. Caffeic acid, found in fruits and coffee, inhibits ROS formation and reduces cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase activity. Ferulic acid scavenges free radicals, enhances SOD and glutathione peroxidase activity, and chelates metals, preventing hydroxyl radical–induced damage (Ilhan *et al.*, 2004; Srinivasan *et al.*, 2007).

TANNINS

Present in wine, tea, and fruits, tannins chelate metals and scavenge radicals, minimizing oxidative biomolecular damage (Zhang *et al.*, 2023).

ALKALOIDS

Nitrogen-containing alkaloids like caffeine and berberine exhibit antioxidant effects. Caffeine enhances SOD activity, while berberine inhibits NADPH oxidase (Maraldi, 2013). Their activity arises from phenolic, OCH_3, or NH_2 groups donating hydrogen and isoprene side chains donating electrons (Al-Sehemi & Irfan, 2017; Ng *et al.*, 2018).

SAPONINS

Triterpenoid or steroidal saponins prevent lipid oxidation by chain-breaking reactions. Ginsenoside elevates Nrf2-mediated antioxidant enzyme expression and suppresses ROS via AMPK activation (Zhang *et al.*, 2021; Dong *et al.*, 2019).

CONCLUSION

Free radicals are unstable and highly reactive molecules with one or more unpaired electrons. These reactive free radicals (ROS/RNS/RSS) are produced both endogenously and exogenously. Naturally, the body's antioxidant system neutralises the free radicals and reduces oxidative stress. Unmanaged free radicals damage large biomolecules like DNA, proteins, and lipids, and lead to cellular dysfunction. Avenues into non-synthetic / pharmacological interventions are important to manage oxidative stress-mediated diseases. Plant-based dietary modifications are essential as the phytocompounds are potential antioxidants to alleviate chronic diseases. These phytoconstituents directly scavenge the free radicals and offer health benefits. Discovery of new antioxidants from plant sources and understanding the mechanism behind the protection is crucial and essential to enhance the therapeutic efficacy.

REFERENCES

[1]. Al-Sehemi, A. G., & Irfan, A. (2017). Effect of donor and acceptor groups on radical scavenging activity of phenol by density functional theory. *Arabian Journal of Chemistry, 10*(Supplement 2), S1703–S1710. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2013.06.012

[2]. Al-Zharani, M., Mubarak, M., Rudayni, H. A., Al-Doaiss, A. A., Abd-Elwahab, M. M., & Al-Eissa, M. S. (2023). Quercetin as a dietary supplementary flavonoid alleviates the oxidative stress induced by lead toxicity in male Wistar rats. *Nutrients, 15*(8), 1888. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu15081888

[3]. Aziz, M. A., Diab, A. S., & Mohammed, A. A. (2019). Antioxidant categories and mode of action. In *Antioxidants*. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.83544

[4]. Bors, W., Michel, C., & Schikora, S. (1995). Interaction of flavonoids with ascorbate and determination of their univalent redox potentials: A pulse radiolysis study. *Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 19*(1), 45–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/0891-5849(95)00011-L.

[5]. Chandimali Nisansala, C., Bak, S. G., Park, E. H., Lim, H. J., Won, Y. S., Kim, E. K., Park, S. I., & Le, S. J. (2025). Free radicals and their impact on health and antioxidant defenses: A review. *Cell Death Discovery, 11*, 19.

[6]. Chaudhary, P., Janmeda, P., Docea, A. O., Yeskaliyeva, B., Abdull Razis, A. F., Modu, B., Calina, D., & Sharifi-Rad, J. (2023). Oxidative stress, free radicals and antioxidants: Potential crosstalk in the pathophysiology of human diseases. *Frontiers in Chemistry, 11*, 1158198. https://doi.org/10.3389/fchem.2023.1158198

[7]. Chiang, A. N., Wu, H. L., Yeh, H. I., Chu, C. S., Lin, H. C., & Lee, W. C. (2006). Antioxidant effects of black rice extract through the induction of superoxide dismutase and catalase activities. *Lipids, 41*(8), 797–803. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11745-006-5033-6

[8]. Dangles, O. (2012). Antioxidant activity of plant phenols: Chemical mechanisms and biological significance. *Current Organic Chemistry, 16*(6), 692–714. https://doi.org/ 10.2174/ 138527212799957995

[9]. Del Rio, D., Rodriguez-Mateos, A., Spencer, J. P. E., Tognolini, M., Borges, G., & Crozier, A. (2013). Dietary (poly) phenolics in human health: Structures, bioavailability, and evidence of protective effects against chronic diseases. *Antioxidants & Redox Signaling, 18*(14), 1818–1892. https://doi.org/10.1089/ars.2012.4581

[10]. Dong, C., Liu, P., Wang, H., Dong, M., Li, G., & Li, Y. (2019). Ginsenoside Rb1 attenuates diabetic retinopathy in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Acta Cirúrgica Brasileira, 34*, e201900201. https://doi.org/10.1590/s0102-865020190020000001

[11]. El-Agamey, A., Lowe, G. M., McGarvey, D. J., Mortensen, A., Phillip, D. M., & Truscott, T. G. (2004). Carotenoid radical chemistry and antioxidant/pro-oxidant properties. *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics, 430*(1), 37–48. https://doi.org/ 10.1016/ j.abb.2004.03.007

[12]. Heeba, G., & Mahmoud, M. E. (2014). Therapeutic potential of morin against liver fibrosis in rats: Modulation of oxidative stress, cytokine production and nuclear factor kappa B. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology, 37*(2), 662–671. https://doi.org/ 10.1016/j.etap.2013.12.013

[13]. Ilhan, A., Akyol, O., Gurel, A., Armutcu, F., Iraz, M., & Oztas, E. (2004). Protective effects of caffeic acid phenethyl ester against experimental allergic encephalomyelitis-induced

oxidative stress in rats. *Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 37*(3), 386–394. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2004.04.007

[14]. Jomova, K., & Valko, M. (2013). Health protective effects of carotenoids and their interactions with other biological antioxidants. *European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, 70*, 102–110. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2013.09.054

[15]. Jomova, K., Raptova, R., Alomar, S. Y., Alwasel, S. H., Nepovimova, E., Kuca, K., & Valko, M. (2023). Reactive oxygen species, toxicity, oxidative stress, and antioxidants: Chronic diseases and aging. *Archives of Toxicology, 97*, 2499–2574. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00204-023-03562-9

[16]. Kähkönen, M. P., Hopia, A. I., Vuorela, H. J., Rauha, J. P., Pihlaja, K., Kujala, T. S., & Heinonen, M. (1999). Antioxidant activity of plant extracts containing phenolic compounds. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 47*(10), 3954–3962.

[17]. Karthikeyan, K., Bai, B. R., & Devaraj, S. N. (2009). Efficacy of grape seed proanthocyanidins on cardioprotection during isoproterenol-induced myocardial injury in rats. *Journal of Cardiovascular Pharmacology, 53*(2), 109–115. https://doi.org/10.1097/FJC.0b013e3181970c01

[18]. Krishnamurthy, P., & Wadhwani, A. (2012). Antioxidant enzymes and human health. In M. A. El-Missiry (Ed.), *Antioxidant enzyme* (pp. 3–18). InTech. https://doi.org/10.3109/0886022X.2015.1103654

[19]. Lin, M. H., Hung, C. F., Sung, H. C., Yang, S. C., Yu, H. P., & Fang, J. Y. (2021). The bioactivities of resveratrol and its naturally occurring derivatives on skin. *Journal of Food and Drug Analysis, 29*(1), 15–38. https://doi.org/10.38212/2224-6614.1275

[20]. Lin, M. J., Chang, S. C., Jea, Y. S., & others. (2016). In vitro antioxidant capability and performance assessment of White Roman goose supplemented with dried *Toona sinensis*. *Journal of Applied Animal Research, 44*(1), 395–402. https://doi.org/10.1080/09712119.2015.1091325

[21]. Ma, Q., & He, X. (2012). Molecular basis of electrophilic and oxidative defense: Promises and perils of Nrf2. *Pharmacological Reviews, 64*(4), 1055–1081. https://doi.org/10.1124/pr.110.004333

[22]. Maraldi, T. (2013). Natural compounds as modulators of NADPH oxidases. *Oxidative Medicine and Cellular Longevity, 2013*, Article 271602. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/271602

[23]. Mortensen, A., Skibsted, L. H., & Truscott, T. G. (2001). The interaction of dietary carotenoids with radical species. *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics, 385*(1), 13–19. https://doi.org/10.1006/abbi.2000.2172

[24]. Musial, C., Kuban-Jankowska, A., & Gorska-Ponikowska, M. (2020). Beneficial properties of green tea catechins. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 21*(5), 1744. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21051744

[25]. Ng, R. C., Kassim, N. K., Yeap, Y. S., Ee, G. C. L., Yazan, S. L., & Musa, K. H. (2018). Isolation of carbazole alkaloids and coumarins from *Aegle marmelos* and *Murraya koenigii*

and their antioxidant properties. *Sains Malaysiana, 47*(8), 1749–1756. https://doi.org/10.17576/jsm-2018-4708-04

[26]. Rahman, K. (2007). Studies on free radicals, antioxidants, and co-factors. *Clinical Interventions in Aging, 2*(2), 219–236.

[27]. Rodríguez-Negrete, E. V., Morales-González, Á., Madrigal Santillán, E. O., Sánchez-Reyes, K., Álvarez-González, I., Madrigal Bujaidar, E., Valadez-Vega, C., Chamorro-Cevallos, G., Garcia-Melo, L. F., & Morales-González, J. A. (2024). Phytochemicals and their usefulness in the maintenance of health. *Plants, 13*(4), 523. https://doi.org/10.3390/ plants13040523

[28]. Simunkova, M., Barbierikova, Z., Jomova, K., Hudecova, L., Lauro, P., Alwasel, S. H., Alhazza, I., Rhodes, C. J., & Valko, M. (2021). Antioxidant vs. prooxidant properties of the flavonoid kaempferol in the presence of Cu(II) ions: A ROS-scavenging activity, Fenton reaction and DNA damage study. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 22*(4), 1619. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms22041619

[29]. Skowyra, M. (2014). *Antioxidant properties of extracts from selected plant materials (Caesalpinia spinosa, Perilla frutescens, Artemisia annua and Viola wittrockiana) in vitro and in model food systems* [Doctoral thesis, Universitat Politècnica de Catalunya]. Department of Chemical Engineering.

[30]. Srinivasan, M., Sudheer, A. R., & Menon, V. P. (2007). Ferulic acid: Therapeutic potential through its antioxidant property. *Journal of Clinical Biochemistry and Nutrition, 40*(2), 92–100. https://doi.org/10.3164/jcbn.40.92

[31]. Tan, B. L., Norhaizan, M. E., Liew, W.-P.-P., & Rahman, H. S. (2018). Antioxidant and oxidative stress: A mutual interplay in age-related diseases. *Frontiers in Pharmacology, 9*, 1162. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2018.01162

[32]. Wallace, T. C., Blumberg, J. B., Johnson, E. J., & Shao, A. (2015). Dietary bioactives: Establishing a scientific framework for recommended intakes. *Advances in Nutrition, 6*(1), 1–4. https://doi.org/10.3945/an.114.007294

[33]. Zhang, L., Guan, Q., Jiang, J., & Khan, M. S. (2023). Tannin complexation with metal ions and its implication on human health, environment and industry: An overview. *International Journal of Biological Macromolecules, 253*, 127485. https://doi.org/10.1016 /j.ijbiomac.2023.127485

[34]. Zhang, X., Wang, L., Guo, R., Xiao, J., Liu, X., Dong, M., Luan, X., Ji, X., & Lu, H. (2021). Ginsenoside Rb1 ameliorates diabetic arterial stiffening via AMPK pathway. *Frontiers in Pharmacology, 12*, 753881. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2021.753881.

Chapter
11

TRADITIONAL EXTRACTION METHODS

ANAND CHAURASIA[1] AND SURJEET SINGH JAT[2]

[1]Department of Botany, PMCoE Chhatrasal Govt. P. G. College Panna (MP) India
[2] Department of Zoology, PMCoE KSCSK Govt. P. G. College Alirajpur (MP) India
Corresponding author E-mail: anandchaurasia@mp.gov.in, dranand003@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Extraction and isolation techniques in phytochemistry refer to the systematic processes employed to separate phytoactive compounds from plant materials in order to study their chemical structures, functions, and potential applications. Once the phytoactive compounds are extracted into solvents, isolation is the subsequent process where individual phytochemicals are separated from mixture containing multiple constituents. Extraction is a process whereby the desired constituents of a plant are removed using a solvent. The primary ways for the extraction of organic molecules of interest to biologists and medical investigators involve breaking open the cells. Extraction is the initial step that involves the separation of phytochemicals from the complex matrix of the plant tissue using suitable solvents. This process targets compounds such as alkaloids, flavonoids, terpenoids, tannins, phenolics, glycosides, and other secondary metabolites. The choice of solvent, temperature, pH, and duration of extraction can be carried out through traditional methods like maceration, percolation, or Soxhlet extraction, as well as through more advanced and efficient modern techniques.

KEYWORDS: Ethnobotanical Plants, Phytochemistry, Soxhlet, Percolation, Secondary Metabolites, Bioactive Compounds.

INTRODUCTION

Ethnobotanical plants are gaining too much attention because of their use to treat and cure several common as well as chronic diseases. The study on Ethnobotanical plants started with the extraction process, which plays a vital role. There is a wide range of extraction methods available. These techniques are classified into two types: firstly, used as traditional methods, and secondly, as modern methods. The traditional methods use solvents and require a long extraction period. The traditional extraction methods are simple, easily available, and low-cost. The domestic applications of traditional extraction are quite familiar to everybody in daily life. This article presents here detailed description of the various traditional methods for better understanding and summarizes the potential to help evaluate the suitability and economic feasibility of them. The qualitative and quantitative studies of bioactive compounds from plant

Materials mainly rely on the selection of a proper extraction method. They are the chief source of useful photoactive contents known for a long time ago by traditionally used as medicine and a natural healer. The use of Ethnobotanical plants in most emerging countries has been widely observed and about 70 percent of the world's poor population relies on ethnobotanical herbs and medicine than on current modern allopathic medicines. Ethnobotanical plants contain many useful compounds such as alkaloids, steroids, tannins, glycosides, volatile oils, fixed oils, resins, phenols, and flavonoids, which are deposited in their specific parts such as leaves, flowers, bark, seeds, fruits, and roots. Several traditional and modern extraction methods exist to extract their useful constituents from plants. The initial crude extracts contain complex mixture of many plants metabolites.

TYPES OF TRADITIONAL EXTRACTION METHODS:

To obtain bioactive compounds from plants, the traditional methods commonly uses are:

1. Percolation method
2. Maceration method
3. Decoction method
4. Soxhlet extraction method
5. Hydro distillation method

Traditional extraction methods such as Maceration and Soxhlet extraction are commonly uses at the small manufacturing enterprise level. Moreover, modifications on the methods are continuously developed with such a variety of methods present, selection of proper extraction method needs meticulous evaluation.

Table 1: List given below of solvents used for active Component extraction.

Water	**Ethanol**	**Methanol**	**Chloroform**	**Dichloro-methanol**	**Ether**	**Acetone**
Tannins Anthocyanin Terpenoids Saponins	Tannins Terpenoids Polyphenols Flavonoids Alkaloids	Tannins Terpenoids Polyphenols Saponins Anthocyanin	Flavonoids Terpenoids	Terpenoids	Alkaloids Terpenoids	Flavonoids

Extraction, as the term uses pharmaceutically, involves the separation of medicinally active compounds of plant or animal tissue from the inactive or inert components by using selective solvents in standard extraction procedures. The products so obtained from plants are relatively impure liquids. Semisolids or powders intended only for oral or external use. Some of the initially obtained extracts may be ready for use as medicinal agents in the form of tinctures and fluid extracts but some need further processing. The traditional extraction methods, including Maceration, Percolation, and Soxhlet extraction, usually use organic solvents and require a large volume of solvents and long extraction time whereas decoction and Hydro distillation methods use water as a solvent.

PERCOLATION METHOD

This is the procedure used most frequently to extract active ingredients in the preparation of tinctures and fluid extracts. A percolator is a narrow, cone shaped vessel opens at the both ends is generally used.

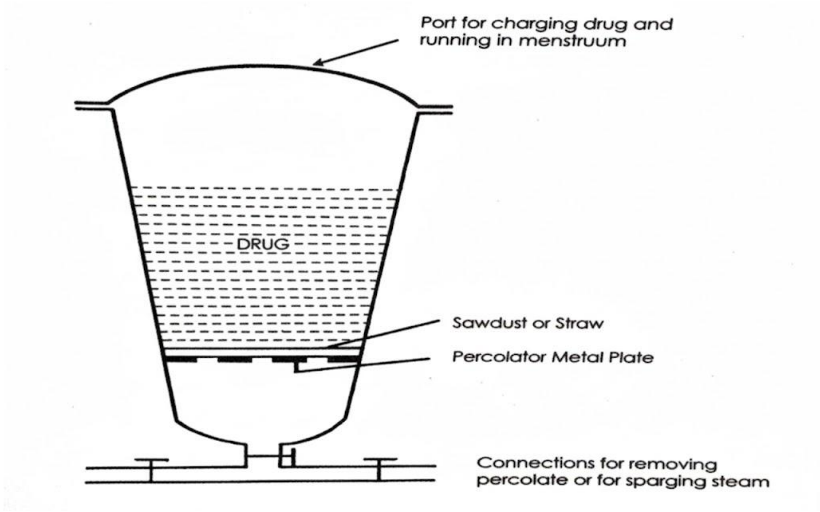


Figure 1: A percolator

The solid ingredients are moistened with an appropriate amount of the solvent and allowed to stand for approximately 4 hours in a well closed container, after which the mass is packed and the top of the percolator is closed. Additional solvent is added to form a shallow layer above the mass, and the mixture is allowed to macerate in the closed percolator for 24 hours. The outlet of the percolator then open and the liquid contained there is allowed to drip slowly. Additional solvent is added as required, until the percolate measures about three quarters of the required volume of the finished product. The extract is then pressed and the liquid is added to the percolate. Sufficient solvent is added to produce the required volume, and the mixed liquid is clarified by filtration or by standing followed by decanting. The process is repeated until a drop of the solvent from the percolator when evaporated does not leave residue.

MERITS

1 Requires less time than maceration.

2 Extraction of thermolabile constituents can be possible.

3 Suitable methods for potent and costly drugs.

4 Short time and more complete extraction.

DEMERITS

1 Requires more time than Soxhlation.

2 More solvent is required.

3 Skilled persons are required.

4 Special attentions should be paid on particle size of material and throughout process.

MACERATION METHOD

Maceration is an old method used for medicinal preparation, it is considered as a widely and low-cost way to get natural products from plant material. The maceration is a method of solid-liquid extraction. In this process, the powdered solid material is placed is a closed vessel and the solvent is added. It is allowed to stand for a long time, varying from hours to days, with occasional shaking. Sufficient time is allowed for the solvent to diffuse through the cell wall to solubilize the constituent present in plant. The process takes place only by molecular diffusion. After the desired time, the liquid is trained off; the solid residue is pressed to recover as much solvent as possible. When the solvent is water and the period of maceration is long, a small quantity of alcohol may be added to prevent microbial growth.

Maceration involves three principal's steps. Firstly, plant materials are converted to powder from by grinding. This allows good contact between solvent and materials. After grinding, a chosen solvent is added in a closed vessel. Then, the liquid is strained off but the solid residue of this extraction process is pressed to recover large amount of occluded solutions. During the process of maceration occasional shaking facilitate extraction by the increasing diffusion and remove concentrated solution from the sample surface for bringing new solvent to the menstruum for more extraction yield.

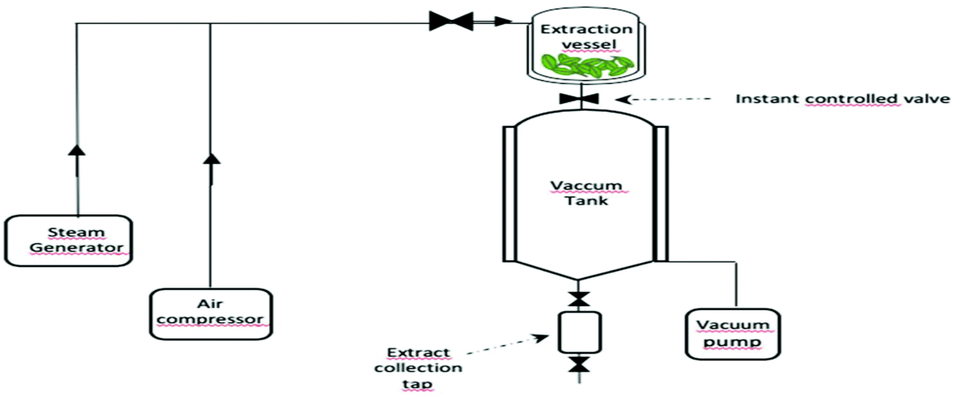


Figure 2: Maceration method

Figure 3: Maceration method

MERITS

1. Maceration is a simple method using non-complicated utensil and equipment.
2. Skilled operators not required
3. Energy saving process.
4. For certain substances which are very less soluble in solvent and requires only prolonged contact with solvent is ideal.
5. Suitable methods for less potent and cheap drugs.

DEMERITS

1. Unfortunately, the duration of extraction time is long and sometimes takes up to weeks.
2. Not exhaustively extract the drug.
3. It is very slow process and time consuming.
4. Solvent requirements are more.

DECOCTION METHOD

It is a suitable method for the extraction of the constituents soluble in water and that cannot also been destroyed by the effect of heat. Decoction is a water-based preparation to extract active compounds from medicinal plant materials. In this process, the liquid preparation is made by boiling the plant material with water. Decoction is the method of choice when working with tough and fibrous plants, barks and roots and with plants that have water-soluble chemicals. The plant material is generally broken into small pieces or powdered. Different methods have been described for the preparation of decoctions. In the Ayurvedic method, traditionally known as kwatha, the crude drug in form of yavakuta (a Small piece) is placed in earthen pots or tinned copper vessels with clay on the outside.

Figure 4: Decoction extraction apparatus

Water is added, and the pot is heated on a fire. If the material is soft, four times water is used per 1-part drug; if the drug is moderately hard, 8 times water is used, and if the drug is very hard, 16 times water is recommended. The mixture is then boiled on a low flame until it is reduced to one-fourth of its starting volume. In the case of soft drugs, and one-eighth in the case of moderately or very hard drugs. The extract is then cooled and strained, and the filtrate is collected in clean vessels.

MERITS

1. Suitable for extracting heat-stable compounds.
2. This method does not require more and expensive equipment.
3. It is easy to perform.
4. No need to a trained operator.

DEMERITS

Unfortunately, it is not advised for the extraction of heat-sensitive constituents.

SOXHLET EXTRACTION METHOD

Named after 'Franz Ritter von Soxhlet', a German agricultural chemist, it is the best method for the continuous extraction of a solid by a hot solvent. Soxhlet apparatus is a specialized glass refluxing unit mainly used for organic solvent extractions. Soxhlet extraction is general and well-established technique, which surpasses in performance other traditional extraction methods except for, in limited fields of application, the extraction of thermolabile compounds. The powdered solid material is placed in a thimble made up of filter paper and is placed inside the Soxhlet apparatus. The apparatus is fitted to a round-bottomed flask containing the solvent and to a reflux condenser. The solvent in the round-bottomed flask is boiled gently, the vapor passes up through the side tube, condensed by the condenser, and falls into the thimble containing the material, and slowly fills the Soxhlet. When the solvent reaches the top of the attached tube, it siphons over into the flask, thus removing the portion of the substance that it has extracted. The operation is repeated until complete extraction is achieved.

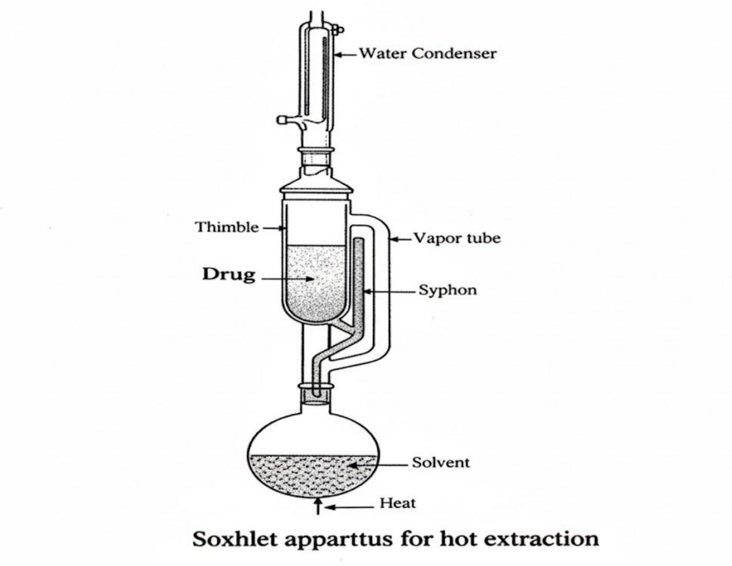


Figure 5: Soxhlet Extraction apparatus

MERITS

1. A large amount of plant material can be extracted at a time.
2. Repeatedly, can use the solvent.
3. This method does not require filtration after extraction.
4. This method does not depend upon the type of matrix.

5. It is a very simple technique.
6. The displacement of transfer equilibrium by repeatedly bringing fresh solvent into contact with the solid matrix.

DEMERITS

The samples are heated to a high temperature for a relatively long period; thus, the risk of thermal destruction of some compounds cannot be overlooked if the plant material contains heat-labile compounds.

HYDRO DISTILLATION METHOD

Hydro distillation is a traditional method for the extraction of plant materials that doesn't use organic solvents. In hydro distillation, plant material is packed in a steel compartment and water is added in a sufficient amount, and then brought to a boil. Alternatively, direct steam is injected into the plant sample. Hot water and steam act as the main influential factors to free bioactive compounds of plant tissue. Indirect cooling by water condenses the vapor mixture of water and oil. Hydro Distillation is potentially a very useful method to extract essential oils from various plants and from their different parts. The yield is dependent on various parameters like the weight of raw material, the volume of water, the size of raw material, and the nature of raw material. Hydro distillation involves three main physicochemical processes: Hydro diffusion, hydrolysis, and decomposition by heat. At a high extraction temperature, some volatile components may be lost. This drawback limits its use for thermolabile compounds extraction.

There are three types of hydro distillation for isolating essential oils from plant materials:

A. Water distillation

B. Water and steam distillation

C. Direct steam distillation

Figure 6: Hydro distillation apparatus

WATER DISTILLATION

In this method, the material is completely immersed in water, which is boiled by applying heat by direct fire, steam jacket, closed steam jacket, closed steam coil or open steam coil. The main characteristic of this process is that there is direct contact between boiling water and plant material.

WATER AND STEAM DISTILLATION

In water and steam distillation, the steam can be generated either in a satellite boiler or within the still, although separated from the plant material. Like water distillation, water and steam distillation is widely used in rural areas. Moreover, it does not require a great deal more capital expenditure than water distillation. Also, the equipment used is generally similar to that used in water distillation, but the plant material is supported above the boiling water on a performing water distillation eventually progress to water and steam distillation.

DIRECT STEAM DISTILLATION

As the name suggests, direct steam distillation is the process of distilling plant material with steam generated outside the steel in a steam generator generally referred to as a boiler. As in water and steam distillation, the plant material is supported on a perforated grid above the steam inlet. A real advantage of satellite steam generation is that the amount of steam can be readily controlled, because steam is generated in a satellite boiler, the plant material is heated no higher than 100^{o} C and, consequently, it should not undergo thermal degradation. Steam distillation is the most widely accepted process for the production of essential oils on large scale. Throughout the flavor and fragrance supply business, it is a standard practice.

MERITS

1. Higher oil yield
2. Components of the volatile oil are less susceptible to hydrolysis and polymerization.
3. If refluxing is controlled, then the loss of polar compounds is minimized
4. Oil quality produced by steam and water distillation is more reproducible.
5. No organic solvent needed so this process is cheap and environment friendly.

DEMERITS

1. Complete extraction is not possible.
2. As the plant material near the bottom of the steel comes in direct contact with the fire from the furnace, it may char and thus impart an objectionable odor to the essential oil.
3. The prolonged action of hot water can cause hydrolysis of some constituents of the essential oil, such as esters.
4. Heat control is difficult, which may lead to variable rates of distillation.
5. It requires a greater number of steel's more space and more fuel. Thus, the process becomes uneconomical.

CONCLUSION

The ever-growing demand to extract plant bioactive compound encourages continuous search for convenient extraction methods. The traditional methods are bases on the solubility of solute from plant materials into solvent. Therefore, it often utilizes a large quantity of solvent to extract the desired compound, even though sometimes assisted with elevated temperature and mechanical stirring or shaking. It can be concluded that, no universal extraction methods are the ideal method and each extraction procedures are unique to the plants. Proper choice of standard methods also influences the measurement of extraction efficiency. On the other hand, the increasing economic significance of bioactive compounds and commodities rich in these bioactive compounds may lead to find out more sophisticated extraction methods in future.

REFERENCES

[1]. M. G. Rasul. (2018). Conventional Extraction Methods Use in Medicinal Plants, their Advantages and Disadvantages. International Journal of Basic Sciences and Applied Computing. Volume -2 Issue-6, December 2018.

[2]. Deepa Panhekar, Trupti P. Sawant, D.P. Gogle, Phytochemicals extraction, separation & Analysis.

[3]. N. Raaman 2nd Fully revised & Enlaged Edition, Phytochemical Techniques.

[4]. M. Balasubramanian, Sosanna Lal. A Text Book on Phytochemistry

(ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9)

Chapter

12

SPECTROSCOPIC FOUNDATION IN PHYTOCHEMISTRY: UV–VISIBLE AND NMR APPROACHES

DEEPIKA JAIN

Department of Chemistry, S. V. Govt. P. G. College, Neemuch
Corresponding author E-mail: Deepikafeb04@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Phytochemical analysis is essential for understanding the chemical composition and biological activity of medicinal plants**.** Spectroscopic methods are central to the identification, structural elucidation, and quantification of phytochemicals research. This chapter reviews fundamentals and practical aspects of ultraviolet–visible (UV–Vis) spectroscopy and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy as applied to phytochemical chemistry. It covers instrumentation basics, sample preparation, characteristic spectral features of major phytochemical classes (phenolics, flavonoids, alkaloids, terpenoids, and glycosides), routine analytical workflows, highlighting their complementary role in modern natural product laboratory.

KEYWORDS: Phytochemistry, UV-Visible, NMR.

INTRODUCTION

The journey from a crude plant extract to a fully characterized pure compound is a meticulous process of separation and identification. Plants produce a broad array of secondary metabolites (phytochemicals) with ecological and pharmacological importance. Accurate characterization of these compounds requires a combination of chromatographic separation and spectroscopic identification. While chromatographic techniques like TLC and HPLC are used for separation, they offer limited structural information. Spectroscopy fills this critical gap by probing the interaction of matter with electromagnetic radiation. Different regions of the electromagnetic spectrum provide different types of information, making spectroscopic methods indispensable. Among these, UV-Vis and NMR spectroscopy form the bedrock of structural analysis, with the former offering insights into electronic structure and the latter providing a comprehensive map of the carbon-hydrogen framework (Harborne, 1998).

UV–VISIBLE SPECTROSCOPY

UV–Visible spectroscopy measures electronic transitions, primarily $\pi\rightarrow\pi^*$ and $n\rightarrow\pi^*$ transitions, and is well suited for conjugated systems (e.g., phenolic acids, flavonoids, some alkaloids). Strengths include simplicity, speed, low sample consumption, and easy coupling to

HPLC for hyphenated analysis (HPLC-UV) enabling both qualitative and quantitative workflows (Pavia *et al.*, 2008; Skoog *et al.*, 2013).

Typical uses in phytochemical chemistry:

- Rapid screening of fractions for chromophores.
- Quantification (e.g., total phenolic content measured by Folin–Ciocalteu or UV absorbance at characteristic λ_{max}).
- Monitoring HPLC separations and collecting fractions for NMR.

BASIC PRINCIPLES

UV-Vis spectroscopy measures the absorption of light in the ultraviolet (190–400 nm) and visible (400–800 nm) regions of the electromagnetic spectrum. Absorption occurs when the energy of the incoming photons matches the energy required to promote an electron from a ground state to an excited state. In organic molecules, this typically involves electrons in π-orbitals, non-bonding (n) orbitals, and, to a lesser extent, σ-orbitals. Molecules containing functional groups that absorb UV or visible light are known as chromophores (e.g., C=C, C=O, aromatic rings).

The fundamental relationship governing absorption is the Beer-Lambert Law:

$A = \varepsilon c l$

Where A is the measured absorbance,

ε is the molar absorptivity (a compound-specific constant),

c is the concentration, and

l is the path length of the sample cell.

This relationship is crucial for quantitative analysis (Skoog *et al.*, 2018).

INSTRUMENTATION AND SAMPLE PREPARATION

A typical UV-Vis spectrophotometer consists of a light source (deuterium lamp for UV, tungsten lamp for visible), a monochromator to select specific wavelengths, a sample holder (cuvette), and a detector. Sample preparation is straightforward: the phytochemical is dissolved in a suitable solvent (e.g., methanol, ethanol, or water) that does not absorb significantly in the region of interest. The analysis is rapid, non-destructive, and requires only microgram quantities of sample.

APPLICATIONS IN PHYTOCHEMISTRY

Detection of Chromophores: UV-Vis is a first-line technique to indicate the presence of major classes of phytochemicals. For instance:

Flavonoids typically show two major absorption bands: Band I (300–380 nm) associated with the cinnamoyl system, and Band II (240–280 nm) associated with the benzoyl system (Mabry *et al.*, 1970).

Anthocyanins, the pigments in flowers and fruits, absorb strongly in the visible region (450–560 nm), giving them their red/blue colors.

Carotenoids show three absorption peaks in the 400–500 nm region due to their extended system of conjugated double bonds.

Quantitative Analysis: Using the Beer-Lambert Law, UV-Vis is widely used to determine the concentration of a compound in solution. This is routinely applied in assays for total phenolic content (using the Folin-Ciocalteu method measured at 765 nm) or total flavonoid content.

Purity Assessment: A single, sharp absorption peak can be an indicator of purity, while the presence of shoulders or multiple peaks may suggest contaminating compounds.

NMR SPECTROSCOPY

NMR spectroscopy observes nuclear spin transitions (commonly ^1H and ^13C) and provides direct information on the chemical environment, connectivity, and stereochemistry of organic molecules (Claridge, 2016). NMR is non-destructive and can yield structure with minimal sample manipulation—ideal for definitive identification after an initial profiling step with UV–Vis/HPLC.

Typical uses in phytochemical chemistry:

- Structural elucidation of novel natural products.
- Determination of substitution patterns in aromatic systems, glycosidic linkages, and stereochemical relationships (using 2D experiments: COSY, HSQC, HMBC, NOESY/ROESY).
- Quantitative NMR (qNMR) for purity and content determination.

NUCLEAR MAGNETIC RESONANCE (NMR) SPECTROSCOPY

BASIC PRINCIPLES

NMR spectroscopy is the most powerful tool for determining the structure of organic molecules in solution. It exploits the magnetic properties of certain atomic nuclei, most commonly ^{1}H (proton) and ^{13}C (carbon-13). When placed in a strong, static magnetic field, these nuclei can absorb radiofrequency radiation and undergo "spin flip" transitions between energy states. The exact frequency at which a nucleus absorbs energy is directly proportional to the strength of the magnetic field it experiences, which is influenced by its local electronic environment (chemical environment). This frequency is reported as a chemical shift (δ), measured in parts per million (ppm), which provides critical information about the type of proton or carbon (e.g., aromatic, aliphatic, carbonyl) (Silverstein *et al.,* 2015).

KEY PARAMETERS IN NMR INCLUDE

Chemical Shift (δ): Identifies the type of proton or carbon.

Integration: The area under a peak, which for ^{1}H NMR, is proportional to the number of protons giving rise to that signal.

Spin-Spin Coupling (J-coupling): The splitting of a signal into multiple peaks due to magnetic interactions with neighbouring, non-equivalent nuclei. This provides information about connectivity and stereochemistry (e.g., cis/trans isomers).

TYPES OF NMR EXPERIMENTS

^{1}H NMR: Provides information on the number, type, and environment of hydrogen atoms in the molecule. It is the most common starting point for structure elucidation.

^{13}C NMR: Reveals the number and types of unique carbon atoms. Since ^{13}C has a low natural abundance, these spectra are typically run in a "proton-decoupled" mode, resulting in single peaks for each chemically distinct carbon.

Two-Dimensional (2D) NMR: Advanced techniques that correlate nuclei with each other, dramatically simplifying the interpretation of complex molecules. Key 2D experiments include:

COSY (Correlation Spectroscopy): Shows couplings between protons that are close to each other (2-3 bonds apart).

HSQC (Heteronuclear Single Quantum Coherence): Correlates a proton directly with the carbon it is attached to. This is invaluable for assigning carbon frameworks.

HMBC (Heteronuclear Multiple Bond Correlation): Correlates a proton with a carbon that is 2-3 bonds away, providing connections through quaternary carbons or heteroatoms.

APPLICATIONS IN PHYTOCHEMISTRY

NMR is the definitive technique for structural elucidation. For example:

Identifying a New Flavonoid: ^{1}H NMR can confirm the presence of aromatic protons and the characteristic meta-coupled protons (doublet, $J \approx 2$ Hz) in the A-ring of many flavonoids. ^{13}C NMR can distinguish between different flavonoid subclasses (e.g., flavone vs. flavonol) based on the chemical shift of the C-2 and C-3 carbons. 2D NMR like HMBC can confirm the linkage between the A- and B-rings via the C-ring (Markham & Geiger, 1994).

Determining Stereochemistry: Coupling constants (J-values) from ^{1}H NMR are used to determine the relative configuration of protons. For instance, a large coupling constant ($J = 6–8$ Hz) indicates axial-axial protons in a six-membered ring (trans-diaxial relationship), while a small coupling constant ($J = 2–4$ Hz) suggests a diequatorial or axial-equatorial relationship.

Mixture Analysis and Metabolomics: NMR can be used to analyze complex mixtures like crude plant extracts without separation, a field known as metabolomics, to generate chemical fingerprints for quality control or to identify biomarkers.

THE COMPLEMENTARY NATURE OF UV-VIS AND NMR

UV-Vis and NMR are not competing techniques but complementary partners in the phytochemical workflow. A typical analysis might proceed as follows:

1. A plant extract fraction is analyzed by UV-Vis, showing absorption maxima characteristic of flavonoids.
2. A pure compound is isolated via column chromatography.
3. The compound's UV spectrum is recorded again to confirm the chromophore is intact.
4. The compound is then subjected to a full suite of NMR experiments (^{1}H, ^{13}C, COSY, HSQC, HMBC).

5. The UV data provides initial evidence for a flavonoid skeleton, while the NMR data is used to determine the exact substitution pattern on the A- and B-rings, the stereochemistry at chiral centers (if any), and to fully elucidate the molecular structure.

CONCLUSION

UV-Visible and NMR spectroscopy are cornerstones of modern phytochemical research. UV-Vis serves as an efficient, accessible tool for initial characterization and quantification, while NMR provides the deep, atomic-resolution data required for definitive structural identification. A thorough understanding of the principles, applications, and interpretation of data from these techniques is essential for any researcher seeking to explore and characterize the vast chemical diversity of the plant kingdom. As technology advances, particularly with the development of higher-field NMR magnets and hyphenated techniques like LC-NMR, the power and efficiency of these spectroscopic methods continue to grow, further unlocking the secrets held within plant-derived molecules.

REFERENCES

[1]. Harborne, J. B. (1998). Phytochemical methods: A guide to modern techniques of plant analysis (3rd ed.). Chapman & Hall.

[2]. Mabry, T. J., Markham, K. R., & Thomas, M. B. (1970). The systematic identification of flavonoids. Springer-Verlag.

[3]. Markham, K. R., & Geiger, H. (1994). ^{1}H nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy of flavonoids and their glycosides in hexadeuterodimethylsulfoxide.

[4]. In J. B. Harborne (Ed.), The flavonoids: Advances in research since 1986 (pp. 441–497). Chapman & Hall.

[5]. Silverstein, R. M., Webster, F. X., Kiemle, D. J., & Bryce, D. L. (2015). Spectrometric identification of organic compounds (8th ed.). John Wiley & Sons.

[6]. Claridge, T. D. W. (2016). *High-Resolution NMR Techniques in Organic Chemistry* (3rd ed.). Elsevier.

[7]. Pavia, D. L., Lampman, G. M., Kriz, G. S., & Vyvyan, J. R. (2008). *Introduction to Spectroscopy: A Guide for Students of Organic Chemistry* (4th ed.). Brooks/Cole.

[8]. Skoog, D. A., Holler, F. J., & Crouch, S. R. (2013). *Principles of Instrumental Analysis* (6th ed.). Cengage Learning.

[9]. Wagner, H., & Bladt, S. (1996). *Plant Drug Analysis: A Thin Layer Chromatography Atlas* (2nd ed.). Springer.

Chapter 13

PHYTOCHEMICALS AS ALTERNATIVE FUNGICIDES FOR CONTROLLING PLANT DISEASES: FRUITS AND VEGETABLES

L. NIVETHA

Department of Biotechnology, PSG College of Arts & Science, Coimbatore-14
Corresponding author E-mail: nivedha.laxman@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Fungal infections are responsible for approximately 70–80% of the losses in agricultural production caused by microbial diseases. Synthetic fungicides have been used to manage plant diseases caused by phytopathogenic fungi; however, their use has been criticized due to unfavorable side effects. In recent years, botanical fungicides have garnered the interest of many researchers as alternative strategies. This review revealed that phytochemicals are effective in managing plant diseases caused by phytopathogenic fungi. Botanical fungicides offer several benefits, including resistance inhibition, eco-friendliness, effectiveness, selectivity, and lower cost compared to synthetic fungicides. However, there are only a small number of approved botanical fungicides due to the many challenges that hinder their adoption and utilization for wider-scale production. Farmers' reluctance, lack of standardized formulation techniques, strict legislation, rapid degradation, and other factors hinder their adoption and utilization.

KEYWORDS: Phytopathogenic Fungi, Microbial Diseases, Formulation Techniques.

INTRODUCTION

As the human population is projected to reach 9.8 billion in 2050, the certainty of a stable future depends on the success and sustainability of the global agricultural economy [1]. Agricultural crops are constantly exposed and or threatened by pests which affect their growth and later quality. To protect crops from pest attacks, farmers typically rely on quick pest management options, mainly synthetic chemicals [2]. Despite the efficacious attribute of synthetic pesticides, continuous usage has its challenges, such as the development of pesticide-resistant pests [3]. The overuse and misuse of synthetic pesticides can lead to harmful effects on humans and the environment, as well as toxicity to non-target organisms, ultimately impacting biodiversity negatively [4]. Constituent compounds of synthetic pesticides have been attributed to chronic human ailments either due to consumption or exposure [5, 6]. Most of the synthetic pesticides are not easily biodegradable thus accumulate in the environment and cause pollution to soil and ground water in addition to depletion of the ozone layer [7]. The disadvantages associated with the misuse and overuses of synthetic pesticides have stirred the need for alternative pest management options [8].

Phytochemicals, as secondary plant metabolites, represent a promising solution for addressing these challenges. They protect plants from disease and damage and contribute to the plant's color, aroma and flavor. In general, the plant chemicals that protect plant cells from environmental hazards such as pollution, stress, drought, UV exposure and pathogenic attack are called as phytochemicals [9,10}.

Management of pests using plant-based products was practiced over time until technology took over and synthetic pesticides were developed. The synthetic pesticides were immediately embraced due to their effectiveness and efficacy in managing serious crop diseases such as rusts and blights [11]. Consequently, the use of natural products of plant origin slowly faded until recently when use of synthetic pesticides started threatening human health and environmental safety [12]. The current global trend is towards consumption of food produced using safe and preferably natural plant protection products. Detection of hazardous chemical pesticide residues in foods and increased consumer awareness on food safety have resulted in a ban on certain pesticides in agricultural production, and plant-based pesticides are gaining popularity in organic agriculture [13, 14]. Continuous use of synthetic pesticides has resulted in negative effects such as pollution, health hazards and loss of biodiversity, while adoption of botanical pesticides results into healthy environment and sustainable agriculture [15]. Use of synthetic pesticides has negatively affected farmers involved in export trade especially of horticultural produce [16]. Detection of banned pesticides or having traces above the regulatory residue limits has led to loss of market and income to both the growers and the exporters in developing countries.

The importance of botanical pesticides is attributed to their efficacy, biodegradability, varied modes of action, low toxicity as well as availability of source materials [17]. Commonly used botanical pesticides are popular in organic farming where organically produced food fetches premium prices [18]. Therefore, botanical pesticides are gaining popularity because they are safe to use on crops produced for human consumption and recently there is a lucrative market among consumers willing to pay more for organically produced food [19]. There are many studies involving the known and yet to be exploited plant species with pesticidal properties [20].

Examples of plants that are sources of commercially available botanical pesticides include pyrethrum (*Tanacetum cinerariifolium*), neem (*Azadirachta indica*), sabadilla (*Schoenocaulon officinale*), tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*) and ryania (*Ryania speciosa*) [21]. Traditionally, farmers have used crop protection products of plant origin in post-harvest pest management especially in preservation of grains during storage. Botanical pesticides are derivatives of plants that repel, inhibit growth or kill pests [22]. Most botanical pesticides are used to manage insect pests and many studies have focused majorly on insect pest management [23].

Table 1: Antifungal activities of crude extracts from plants against phytopathogenic fungi that affect fruits and vegetables.

Plant species (part used)	**Fungi species (disease caused)**	**Efficacy observed**
Lantana hirta (leaf and flower), *Argemone ochroleuca* (leaf-fruit and root), *Adenophyllum Porophyllu* (leaf-stem and leaf)	*Pestalotiopsis clavispora, Colletotrichum gloeosporioides Lasiodiplodia pseudotheobromae* (Blueberry dieback)	In an in vitro assay, ethyl acetate extracts of the listed plants obtained by maceration inhibited 100% of the mycelial growth of the fungal strains at a concentration of 5 mg/mL.
Cuminum cyminum, Zingiber officinale Citrullus colocynthis	*Macrophomina phaseolina* (Okra seed rot and seedlings death)	In an in vitro assay, *C. cyminum* 70% ethanol extract had a significant effect on the inhibition of the radial growth and dry weight of *M. phaseolina* followed by *Z. officinale* and *C. colocynthis*.
Acacia albida (leaves) • *Azadirachta indica* (leaves) • *Argemone Mexicana* (leaves) • *Dovalis abyssinica* (leaves) • *Prosopis juliflora* (leaves) • *Vernonia amygdalina* (leaves)	*Colletotrichum musae* (Banana anthracnose)	In vitro assay using a paper disk and spore germination methods demonstrated that the methanol extracts have high to moderate antifungal activity. • *P. juliflora* methanol extract was the most effective in inhibiting mycelial growth of the test fungus (30.7 mm), followed by A. albida (19 mm). • *D. abyssinica, A. mexicana*, and *V. amygdalina* showed good antifungal activity (11.7, 11.0, and 9.7 mm, respectively). • Extracts from *D. abyssinica, P. juliflora and A. albida* reduced conidial germination to 0.5, 0.3 and 0.2%, respectively. • Aqueous extracts of *A. albida* showed the highest antifungal activity (18 mm), followed by *P. juliflora* (12.3 mm).
Allium sativum (bulb) • *Datura metel* (leaves) • *Dryopteris filix-mas* (aerial parts)	*Pestalotiopsis theae* • *Colletotrichum camelliae* • *Curvularia eragrostidis* • *Botryodiplodia theobromae*	In vitro assay using spore germination method revealed that ethanol and aqueous extracts of the listed plants have 100% inhibition of spore germination.

• *Zingiber officinale* (rhizomes) • *Smilax zeylanica* (leaves) • *Azadirachta indica* (leaves) • *Curcuma longa* (rhizomes)	(Tea leaf disease)	
Solanum indicum (whole parts) • *Azadirachta indica* (young twigs with fruits) • *Oxalis latifolia* (aerial parts)	*Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. Lycopersici* (wilt disease of tomato)	In an in vitro assay using poisoned food technique, the aqueous extracts of the plants obtained by maceration were proved to be potential in inhibiting the growth of the fungus viz., *S. indicum* (78.33%), *A. indica* (75.00%), and *O. latifolia* (70.33%).
Thespesia populnea var. acutiloba (leaves) • *Chrysanthemum frutescens* (leaves)	*Sclerotium rolfsii* (sugar beet damping-off)	Laboratory experiments (in vitro assay) indicated that methanol extracts of both plants were effective against *S. rolfsii.* • In vivo results under greenhouse conditions confirmed that these plant extracts were effective against the damping-off pathogen, either by coating or soaking of Sugar beet seeds.
Plantago major • *Rosmarinus officinalis*	*Alternaria species* (Carrot leaf blight and black rot)	In an in vitro assay, *R. officinalis* extract obtained by liquid carbon dioxide subcritical extraction had an apparent reducing effect on fungal growth that was dose-dependent while *P. major* was found to be less effective.
Phyllostachys pubescens (leaves)	*Phytophthora capsici* • *Fusarium graminearum* • *Valsa mali* • *Botryosphaeria dothidea* • *Venturia nashicola* • *Botrytis cinerea* (pepper phytophthora blight)	The extract obtained by 95% ethanol showed good anti-fungal activity to *P. capsici, F. graminearum, V. mali, B. dothidea, V. nashicola, and B. cinerea* with inhibitory rate of 100.00%, 75.12%, 60.66%, 57.24%, 44.62%, and 30.16%, respectively in in vitro assay. • In in vivo (greenhouse) assay, the formulated extract (10% emulsion in water) had a control effect of 85.60% on pepper phytophthora blight.

Plant extracts are substances obtained from the roots, barks, seeds, shoots, leaves, fruits, flowers, cloves, rhizomes, or stems of plants which have a long therapeutic history and chosen for their natural defense mechanisms. The process of obtaining plant extracts typically entails macerating the plant material with various organic solvents, and may be followed by the purification of the resulting crude extracts using chromatographic techniques to acquire specific chemicals, which ultimately results in the isolation of the metabolites in pure form. Additionally, it has been noted that the method and solvent used to get the final material (extract) of this procedure affect the quantity and variety of chemicals or secondary metabolites thought to have antifungal properties.

Botanical fungicides contain secondary metabolites that are poisonous to the cell membranes, organelles, and walls of fungi. These metabolites prevent the germination of spores, the growth of mycelium, the lengthening of germ tubes, delayed sporulation, as well as the production of critical enzymes, DNA, and proteins. Additionally, they cause structural changes in the hypha and mycelia, which prevent some fungi such as Aspergillus spp. and Fusarium spp. from producing toxic compounds like aflatoxin and fumonisin respectively. As a result, mycotoxin-producing fungal infections are less pathogenic [24].

COMPOUNDS ISOLATED FROM PLANTS AS FUNGICIDES AGAINST PHYTOPATHOGENIC FUNGI

Higher plants provide an abundant source of bioactive secondary metabolites that have been shown to have antifungal effects in in vitro assay. In order to achieve a sustainable control of phytopathogenic fungi and to lessen the heavy reliance on synthetic fungicides used to control them, secondary metabolites with antifungal activity constitute alternative mechanisms. These compounds can be utilized directly or as a starting point for developing more effective fungicidal chemicals

Table 2: Compounds isolated from plants as fungicides against phytopathogenic fungi

Plant species (Part used)	**Fungi species (Disease caused)**	**Efficacy observed**
Curcuma longa (roots)	*Podosphaera xanthii* (cucumber powdery mildew)	The EC50 value of (+)-(S)-ar-turmerone (1) isolated from petroleum ether fraction of ethanol extract was found to be 28.7 μg/mL and the compound was proved to have a curative effect in in vivo (greenhouse) assay
Caryodaphnopsis baviensis (leaves and stems)	*Alternaria porri* (purple blotch diseases of *Allium* plants)	Magnolol (2), a neolignan compound isolated from n-hexane and ethyl acetate fractions of methanol extract showed a significant inhibitory activity against the spore germination and mycelial growth of A. porri with IC50 values of 4.5 and 5.4 μg/mL, respectively in in vitro assay.

		• When magnolol was sprayed onto onion plants at a concentration of 500 μg/mL, it showed more than 80% disease control efficacy for the purple blotch diseases in in vivo (greenhouse) assay
Trevesia palmata (aerial parts)	*Alternaria porri* • *B. cinerea* • *C. coccodes* • *F. oxysporum* • *P. infestans* (tomato and pepper diseases)	In an in vitro assay, disease control values against tomato gray mold, and tomato late blight were 82 and 88 respectively when the plants were treated with hederagenin-3-O-β-Dglucopyranosyl-(1→3)-α-L-rhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-α-Lrhamnopyranosyl-(1→2)-α-L-arabinopyranoside (3) (500 μg/mL), a triterpene glycoside isolated from n-butanol and ethyl acetate fractions of methanol extract obtained by reflux.
Corydalis ternata (tubers)	*Botrytis cinerea* (tomato gray mold) • *Phytophthora infestans* (tomato late blight) • *Colletotrichum coccodes* (pepper anthracnose)	Isoquinoline alkaloids (dehydrocorydaline, stylopine and corydaline isolated from chloroform fraction of methanol extract exhibited *in vivo* antifungal activity against *C. coccodes.*
Coptis japonica (roots)	*Botrytis cinerea* • *Phytophthora infestans* • *Rhizoctonia solani* (cucumber gray mold, tomato late blight)	Berberine chloride, an isoquinoline alkaloid isolated from chloroform fraction of methanol extract had an apparent LC50 value of approximately 190 mg/L against *B. cinerea* in *in vivo* assay. • *Coptisine chloride*), another isoquinoline alkaloid isolated from butanol fraction of methanol extract had an LC50 value of 210 mg/L against *B. cinerea*.
Myristica fragrans (seeds)	*Alternaria alternata* • *Colletotrichum coccodes* • *C. gloeosporioides* (tomato gray mold and tomato late blight).	In *in vitro* assay, the listed fungi were relatively sensitive to *erythro*-austrobailignan-6 (meso-dihydroguaiaretic acid and nectandrin-B lignans isolated from ethyl acetate and n-butanol combined fractions of methanol extract with varied activity. • Nectandrin-B was highly active against the development of tomato late blight

COMMERCIALIZED BOTANICAL FUNGICIDES

New classes of natural plant protection products have recently been developed, approved, and successfully integrated into agricultural practice with the help of organizations empowered to market these products and this has been a real success for commerce.

Table 3: Commercialized Botanical Fungicides

Trade names	**Descriptions on botanical sources, uses, efficacy, application method and mechanism of action**
EcoSwing®	Botanical source: *Swinglea glutinosa* • Application method: Applied in a regularly scheduled preventative spray program. Ground applications, aerial applications, chemigation applications are possible. • Mechanism of action: It has a unique mode of action, 0-day pre-harvest interval, and exemption from tolerances, making it an essential tool in any integrated pest management (IPM) program. EcoSwing has a multi-site mode of action, and may be used to delay or prevent the development of resistance to single site fungicides
Fracture®	Botanical source: Cotyledons of lupine plants • Uses: A broad-spectrum, biological fungicide labeled for the prevention and control of powdery mildew, botrytis and brown rot blossom blight on almonds, grapes, strawberries and tomatoes. • Application method: Foliar applications • Mechanism of action: It works on contact by deforming and inhibiting fungal cell production, ultimately tearing apart the cell wall and disrupting the fungal cell membrane.
Sporan® EC2	Botanical source: Rosemary, Clove, Thyme, and Peppermint • Uses: It controls diseases such as Botrytis gray mold of strawberries, powdery mildews of grapes andgerbera daisies, Phytophthora late blight of tomatoes, etc. • Application method: Foliar spray (aerial applications) • Mechanism of action: Destroys pathogen cell walls, interferes with fungus attaching to plant
Thyme Guard®	Botanical source: Thyme (Thymus vulgaris) • Uses: Used for controlling Botrytis, Fusarium, powdery mildew, downy mildew, citrus canker, citrus greening-HLB, fire blight, and many others. • Application method: Aerial application • Mechanism of action: With plant pathogens, it attacks and breaches their cellular membranes, causing their death.

ADVANTAGES OF USING BOTANICAL FUNGICIDES FOR CONTROLLING PLANT DISEASES

The finest defense against any form of infection, pathogenesis, or disease protection issues is a product from nature. They are the primary alternatives that agriculturalists and plant biologists utilize to prevent fungal disease due to their degradability in nature [25]. Plant extracts have benefits like multiple action mechanisms because there are so many active ingredients in each mixture, low toxicity to non-target organisms, including humans, relatively straightforward and inexpensive production processes, and reduced health risks during application because of low residue toxicity.

CHALLENGES IN ADOPTION AND SOLUTIONS FOR UTILIZATION OF BOTANICAL FUNGICIDES FOR CONTROLLING PLANT DISEASES

Despite the fact that plant products are effective substitutes for synthetic fungicides and have a strong track record, their extensive practical applicability is still constrained by farmers' resistance to using natural products as biofungicides and the paucity of research in this field. Developing efficient stabilization processes (such as microencapsulation), simplifying complicated and expensive authorization requirements for the use of natural plant protection products, and optimizing plant growth conditions and extraction processes leading to a homogenous chemical composition are the main challenges for future research, according to an analysis of the main strengths and weaknesses that arise from the use of plant extracts as natural plant protection products.

The main causes of their low adoption for production at a commercial scale are a lack of adequate information and extension services at the farmer's level and sluggish results compared to synthetic fungicides. Farmers are discouraged from using botanical fungicides since they are less effective than chemical fungicides and are not readily available on the market when needed. Farmers themselves can make botanical fungicides but they tend to choose chemical fungicides since the creation of botanical fungicides necessitates the use of specialized plants and takes a lot of time and effort. Furthermore, the widespread use of botanical fungicides is hindered by rigorous regulations, less lasting or quick degradation, and variations in the active ingredient composition with plants. Growing in various climatic situations. Large biomass of chosen plants is needed for the commercial manufacture of botanical fungicides. Their manufacturing and adoption are hindered by the bulkiness issue during collection, production, and application. The need to develop formulations, the presence of some chemical compounds that are harmful to people and plants, the lack of standardized extraction methods, rapid degradation, inadequate *in vivo* studies, less effectiveness, and limited availability of formulations are additional barriers to the use of botanicals in the management of plant diseases For the production on a small scale, farmers need to have access to extension services about botanical fungicide identification, preparation methods, and application. They should get subsidies in order to promote the creation and use of botanical fungicides. It is important to raise awareness about the advantages of natural fungicides over synthetic ones. Focus should be placed on sustainable agriculture and organic farming because these concepts can draw customers to such goods. It would be preferable if the government set the prices in accordance with the goods' quality. Legislation regarding their import and export must be made simple. Taxes on these goods ought to be decreased, although they might be raised on chemical fungicides. For large-scale production, the government must make loans with low interest rates available to the producers. It is important to investigate prospective plants with fungicidal qualities.

CONCLUSION

Phytochemicals are effective fungicides against a wide range of fungal species that cause pre- and post-harvest illnesses of plants. Botanical fungicides inhibit development of resistance, are ecofriendly, effective, selective, and more affordable compared to synthetic fungicides. However, their number in the market is very small because of many factors that hinder wide scale production at commercial scale. Challenges of adoption and utilization of botanical fungicides at commercial level for wide scale production may be caused by a variety of issues, including farmers' resistance to using natural products as biofungicides, lack of standardized extraction and formulation techniques, slow results in comparison to chemical fungicides, strict legislation, rapid degradation, and variations in the active ingredient composition with plants grown in various climatic conditions. Numerous researchers have recommended isolating and characterizing the active antifungal compounds in the crude extract, conducting *in vivo* experiments in controlled greenhouse settings and open fields to practically evaluate the use of these extract in the context of an Integrated Pest Management system, determining the precise mechanism of action by which these extracts work, the use of multiple plant extracts in combination to increase effectiveness, conducting phytotoxicity research, analyzing the number and timing of applications to determine the efficacy of the extract to prevent disease in the field, investigating potential toxicity on humans or livestock, as well as the stability of the extracts during grain storage treatment, and the use of plant extracts in conjunction with other well-established disease control practices for effective control.

REFERENCES

[1]. H.K. Santra, D. Banerjee, (2020). Natural products as fungicide and their role in crop protection, Natural. Products in Sustainable Agric. 131–219, https://doi. org/10.1007/978-981-15-3024-1_9.

[2]. Nkechi, E. F., Ejike, O. G., Ihuoma, N. J., Maria-goretti, O. C., Francis, U., Godwin, N., & Njokuocha, R. (2018). Effects of aqueous and oil leaf extracts of Pterocarpus santalinoides on the maize weevil, Sitophilus zeamais pest of stored maize grains. *African Journal of Agricultural Research*, *13*(13), 617-626.

[3]. Shabana, Y. M., Abdalla, M. E., Shahin, A. A., El-Sawy, M. M., Draz, I. S., & Youssif, A. W. (2017). Efficacy of plant extracts in controlling wheat leaf rust disease caused by Puccinia triticina. *Egyptian Journal of Basic and Applied Sciences*, *4*(1), 67-73.

[4]. Sande, D., Mullen, J., Wetzstein, M., & Houston, J. (2011). Environmental impacts from pesticide use: a case study of soil fumigation in Florida tomato production. *International journal of environmental research and public health*, *8*(12), 4649-4661.

[5]. Damalas, C. A., & Koutroubas, S. D. (2016). Farmers' exposure to pesticides: toxicity types and ways of prevention. *Toxics*, *4*(1), 1.

[6]. Kumari, K. A., Kumar, K. R., & Rao, C. N. (2014). Adverse effects of chemical fertilizers and pesticides on human health and environment. *Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Sciences*, *3*, 150-151.

[7]. Sande, D., Mullen, J., Wetzstein, M., & Houston, J. (2011). Environmental impacts from pesticide use: a case study of soil fumigation in Florida tomato production. *International journal of environmental research and public health*, *8*(12), 4649-4661.

[8]. Mahmood, I., Imadi, S. R., Shazadi, K., Gul, A., & Hakeem, K. R. (2016). Effects of pesticides on environment. In *Plant, soil and microbes: volume 1: implications in crop science* (pp. 253-269). Cham: Springer International Publishing.

[9]. Gibson EL, Wardel J, Watts CJ. (1998). Fruit and Vegetable Consumption, Nutritional Knowledge and Beliefs in Mothers and Children. Appetite 1998; 31: 205-228.

[10]. Mathai K. (2000). Nutrition in the Adult Years. In Krause's Food, Nutrition, and Diet Therapy, 10th ed., ed. L.K. Mahan and S. Escott-Stump, 2000; 271: 274-275.

[11]. Raja, N. (2014). Botanicals: sources for eco-friendly biopesticides. *Journal of Biofertilizers and Biopesticides*, *5*(1), 1.

[12]. Nikkhah, M., Hashemi, M., Najafi, M. B. H., & Farhoosh, R. (2017). Synergistic effects of some essential oils against fungal spoilage on pear fruit. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*, *257*, 285-294.

[13]. Karaca, G., Bilginturan, M., & Olgunsoy, P. (2017). Effects of some plant essential oils against fungi on wheat seeds. *Indian Journal of Pharmaceutical Education and Research*, *51*(3), S385-S388.

[14]. Mishra, R. K., Bohra, A., Kamaal, N., Kumar, K., Gandhi, K., GK, S., & Singh, N. P. (2018). Utilization of biopesticides as sustainable solutions for management of pests in legume crops: achievements and prospects. *Egyptian Journal of Biological Pest Control*, *28*(1), 1-11.

[15]. Shabana, Y. M., Abdalla, M. E., Shahin, A. A., El-Sawy, M. M., Draz, I. S., & Youssif, A. W. (2017). Efficacy of plant extracts in controlling wheat leaf rust disease caused by Puccinia triticina. *Egyptian Journal of Basic and Applied Sciences*, *4*(1), 67-73.

[16]. NAShwA, S. M., & Abo-ElyouSr, K. A. (2012). Evaluation of various plant extracts against the early blight disease of tomato plants under greenhouse and field conditions. *Plant Protection Science*, *48*(2), 74-79.

[17]. Neeraj, G. S., Kumar, A., Ram, S., & Kumar, V. (2017). Evaluation of nematicidal activity of ethanolic extracts of medicinal plants to Meloidogyne incognita (kofoid and white) chitwood under lab conditions. *Int. J. Pure Appl. Biosci*, *1*, 827-831.

[18]. Gupta, S., & Dikshit, A. K. (2010). Biopesticides: An ecofriendly approach for pest control. *Journal of Biopesticides*, *3*(Special Issue), 186.

[19]. Misra, H. P. (2014). Role of botanicals, biopesticides and bioagents in integrated pest management. 62-67.

[20]. Erenso, T. F., & Berhe, D. H. (2016). Effect of neem leaf and seed powders against adult maize weevil (Sitophilus zeamais Motschulsky) mortality. *Int. J. Agric. Res*, *11*, 90-94.

[21]. Arnason, J. T., Sims, S. R., & Scott, I. M. (2012). Natural products from plants as insecticides. *Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems (EOLSS)*, 1-8.

[22]. Hikal, W. M., Baeshen, R. S., & Said-Al Ahl, H. A. (2017). Botanical insecticide as simple extractives for pest control. *Cogent Biology*, *3*(1), 1404274.

[23]. Ali, S., Sagheer, M., Hassan, M., Abbas, M., Hafeez, F., Farooq, M., & Ghaffar, A. (2014). Insecticidal activity of turmeric (Curcuma longa) and garlic (Allium sativum) extracts against red flour beetle, Tribolium castaneum: A safe alternative to insecticides in stored commodities. *J. Entomol. Zool. Stud*, *2*(3), 201-205.

[24]. G.M.W. Lengai, J.W. Muthomi, E.R. Mbega, (2020). Phytochemical activity and role of botanical pesticides in pest management for sustainable agricultural crop production, Sci. African 7, e00239.

[25]. H.K. Santra, D. Banerjee, (2020). Natural products as fungicide and their role in crop protection, Natural . Products in Sustainable Agric. 131–219

Chapter 14

MASS SPECTROMETRY IN STRUCTURAL ELUCIDATION OF PHYTOCHEMICALS

PANKAJ V. LEDADE*[1], NITU G. PARCHAKE[1], DNYANESHWAR N. LANJEWAR[1] AND HARIHAR P. DAHIKAR[2]

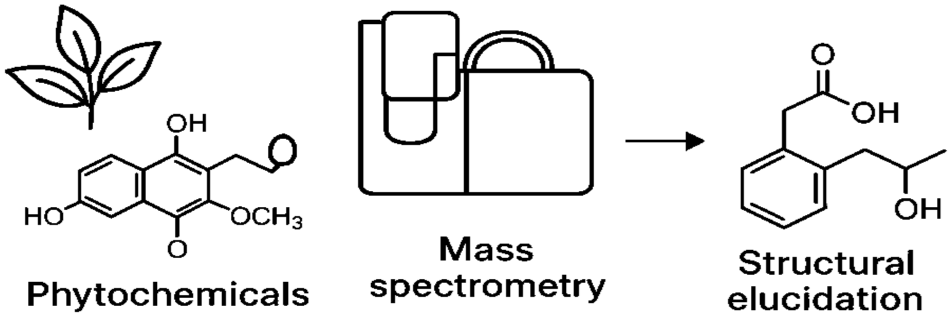
[1]Yashwantrao Chawhan Arts, Commerce & Science College,
Lakhandur, Dist. Bhandara, Maharashtra – 441803, India
[2]Nutan Adarsh Arts, Comm. and Smt. M. H. Wegad Science College,
Umred, Dist- Nagpur, Maharashtra – 441203, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: pankaj.ledade@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Phytochemicals are an incredibly rich and diverse group of natural compounds that play essential roles in plant defense, ecological interactions, and human health. Because many of these molecules exhibit promising therapeutic, antioxidant, and nutraceutical properties, understanding their precise chemical structures has become increasingly important for modern research. Mass spectrometry (MS) has emerged as one of the most reliable and informative techniques for exploring these structures, offering exceptional sensitivity, accurate mass determination, and the power to analyze even trace-level metabolites. This chapter introduces the fundamental principles of mass spectrometry and explains how different ionization methods and mass analyzers contribute to the identification of plant-based compounds. It highlights the value of tandem mass spectrometry (MS/MS) in revealing fragmentation behavior and functional groups, making it easier for researchers to piece together complex structures. The chapter also explores how hyphenated techniques—such as GC–MS and LC–MS/MS—support the separation and identification of a wide range of phytochemicals. Beyond classical applications, the chapter discusses emerging areas such as MS-based metabolomics, molecular networking, and advanced computational tools that are accelerating the discovery of new plant metabolites. Key challenges, including matrix complexity and isomer differentiation, are also addressed. Overall, the chapter underscores how mass spectrometry continues to transform phytochemical research by offering deeper, faster, and more accurate structural insights.

KEYWORDS: Mass Spectrometry, Phytochemicals, MS/MS; Fragmentation; Ionization Techniques, Metabolomics, Analytical Chemistry.

GRAPHICAL ABSTRACT:



INTRODUCTION

Phytochemicals, the diverse secondary metabolites produced by plants, have long been recognized for their significant role in human health, disease prevention, and therapeutic development. These compounds—including alkaloids, flavonoids, terpenoids, phenolics, tannins, glycosides, and numerous other structural classes—form one of nature's richest reservoirs of biologically active molecules. Their structural diversity, ecological significance, and pharmacological potential have made them foundational elements in natural product research. Historically, plants have been central to traditional medicine, and many modern drugs trace their origins to phytochemical scaffolds. This deep connection between plant chemistry and human health continues to drive global research efforts aimed at discovering bioactive phytochemicals and understanding their mechanisms of action. Studies show that natural products and their derivatives still constitute a major proportion of FDA-approved drugs, emphasizing their enduring relevance in modern drug discovery (Newman & Cragg, 2020). The renewed scientific interest in natural compounds, supported by advances in analytical technology, reflects the growing appreciation of phytochemicals as sources of novel therapeutic agents (Harvey *et al.,* 2015). Many phytochemicals act as chemotaxonomic markers, enabling scientists to differentiate plant species and understand their evolutionary relationships. Their biosynthesis—shaped by environmental pressures such as herbivory, microbial attack, and abiotic stress—reflects the dynamic interaction between plants and their ecosystems (Dewick, 2009). Because phytochemicals arise from sophisticated biosynthetic pathways, their structures often contain unique functional groups, complex ring systems, and stereochemical features not commonly found in synthetic libraries. These characteristics make them invaluable templates for pharmaceutical innovation.

Despite their importance, phytochemicals pose unique challenges for chemical characterization. Plant extracts are chemically complex, containing hundreds or even thousands of metabolites with diverse physicochemical properties. Many phytochemicals are present at trace levels, possess unstable intermediates, or are produced in response to specific environmental conditions, making them difficult to isolate using traditional techniques. (Dewick, 2009). As a result, accurate and comprehensive structural analysis is a core requirement in phytochemical research. Classical methods of structural elucidation—such as elemental analysis, UV-visible spectroscopy, and chemical derivatization—provided foundational knowledge but lacked the sensitivity and resolution needed for modern natural product discovery. The emergence of advanced analytical technologies, especially chromatographic separation coupled with mass spectrometry (MS), has revolutionized phytochemical analysis. Mass spectrometry, due to its exceptional sensitivity, selectivity, and ability to detect compounds at extremely low concentrations, has become the most widely used tool for characterizing plant metabolites (Gross, 2017). The technique allows researchers to measure the mass-to-charge ratio of molecules with high accuracy, helping determine molecular weights, elemental compositions, and fragmentation patterns that reveal structural relationships. One of the major reasons MS is indispensable in phytochemical analysis is its compatibility with a wide range of ionization methods. Electrospray ionization (ESI) and atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI) are particularly effective for analyzing polar and thermally unstable compounds in liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry (LC–MS) systems, making them suitable for phenolics, flavonoids, glycosides, saponins, and alkaloids (Niessen, 2017). Matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI) enables the analysis of larger molecules, including plant polymers and metabolites directly from tissues. These ionization techniques expand the analytical scope of MS to cover almost every major phytochemical class.

Tandem mass spectrometry (MS/MS) provides even greater structural insight by analyzing fragmentation patterns of precursor ions. Fragmentation behavior reflects underlying chemical structures; for example, glycosidic bond cleavage produces characteristic neutral losses in glycosides, while retro-Diels–Alder fragmentation is common in flavonoids (Cuyckens & Claeys, 2004). These fragment ions act as molecular fingerprints and allow researchers to deduce functional groups, substitution patterns, and substructures. MS/MS is especially valuable when reference standards are unavailable—a common scenario in natural product discovery. High-resolution mass spectrometry (HRMS), such as Orbit rap and FT-ICR instruments, provides precise mass measurements with errors often below 1 ppm, enabling confident molecular formula determination (Smith *et al.,* 2014: Wolfender *et al.,* 2013). Such approaches have become essential for quality control of herbal medicines and the discovery of new biomarkers. The combination of chromatography with MS—particularly GC–MS and LC–MS—has significantly improved the analysis of phytochemicals. GC–MS is highly effective for volatile compounds such as terpenes, essential oils, and small phenolics, while LC–MS remains the method of choice for non-volatile, polar, or thermally unstable phytochemicals (Niessen, 2017). These hyphenated techniques reduce matrix interference, improve sensitivity, and allow for quantitative and qualitative analysis of complex plant extracts. They also facilitate chemo profiling and standardization of medicinal plants—critical requirements in pharmacognosy, food science, and herbal product development. In the last decade, computational advancements have further enhanced MS-based phytochemical research. Software platforms such as MZmine (Pluskal *et al.,* 2010), XCMS (Tautenhahn *et al.,* 2012), and MS-DIAL support automated peak detection, deconvolution, alignment, and statistical interpretation of large datasets. Molecular networking through the Global Natural Products Social (GNPS) platform has emerged as a transformative tool. GNPS organizes MS/MS data based on spectral similarity, enabling researchers to visualize chemical relationships and rapidly identify families of related compounds, even when reference spectra are unavailable (Wang *et al.,* 2016). These digital tools have accelerated natural product discovery and reduced redundancy in the isolation of known compounds, allowing researchers to focus on truly novel structures.

Mass spectrometry has also expanded into imaging applications. MALDI imaging mass spectrometry (IMS) enables spatial mapping of metabolites directly within plant tissues, revealing how compounds are distributed among cellular structures. This technique provides new insights into biosynthesis, ecological interactions, and the localization of bioactive metabolites (Lei *et al.,* 2011). Meanwhile, ambient ionization techniques such as DESI and DART allow direct analysis of samples without extensive preparation, increasing efficiency in screening plant materials (Zhou & Zare, 2019).

Overall, mass spectrometry has become an indispensable pillar of phytochemical research. Its ability to provide rapid, sensitive, high-throughput, and structurally informative data aligns perfectly with the needs of modern natural product discovery. As analytical technologies evolve, MS will continue to deepen our understanding of plant chemistry, accelerate the identification of bioactive compounds, and advance innovations in medicine, agriculture, and biotechnology. The synergy of MS with metabolomics, computational tools, and imaging technologies ensures that it will remain at the forefront of phytochemical analysis for decades to come.

FUNDAMENTALS OF MASS SPECTROMETRY

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF MASS SPECTROMETRY

Mass spectrometry (MS) has become one of the most trusted tools for studying natural compounds, largely because of its ability to deliver precise structural information from even the smallest sample amounts. Although the underlying physics may appear complex, the basic idea behind MS is straightforward: molecules are turned into charged particles and then separated based on their mass-to-charge ratio (m/z). The resulting mass spectrum works almost like a chemical fingerprint that helps researchers identify unknown molecules or confirm the identity of known ones (Gross, 2017). A crucial step in this process is ionization, because a molecule must be charged before it can be detected. Different ionization techniques exist because phytochemicals vary widely in their physical and chemical properties. For example, volatile and thermally stable compounds—such as those found in essential oils—respond well to Electron Ionization (EI). EI is considered a “hard” ionization technique because it fragments molecules extensively. Although this may seem destructive, it actually helps scientists interpret structural features by examining the fragmentation pattern. Classical GC–MS methods often rely on EI, supported by massive spectral libraries (Sparkman *et al.*, 2011). In contrast, many plant metabolites cannot survive the harsh conditions of EI. Molecules like flavonoids, glycosides, alkaloids, saponins, and tannins need gentler ionization methods. This is where Electrospray Ionization (ESI) and Atmospheric Pressure Chemical Ionization (APCI) play a major role. These "soft" techniques allow the molecule to remain largely intact, making it far easier to determine the molecular weight and composition of complex natural products (de Hoffmann & Stroobant, 2019).

The concept of mass-to-charge ratio (m/z) is central to MS interpretation. Most ions generated during MS carry only a single charge, so the m/z value usually corresponds closely to the molecular mass. However, ESI can produce multiply charged ions, which makes it possible to analyze very large molecules—such as polysaccharides and peptides—without requiring high-mass scanning ranges (Siuzdak, 2006). Understanding how molecules ionize helps researchers choose the right method for their sample and interpret the resulting spectra more effectively.

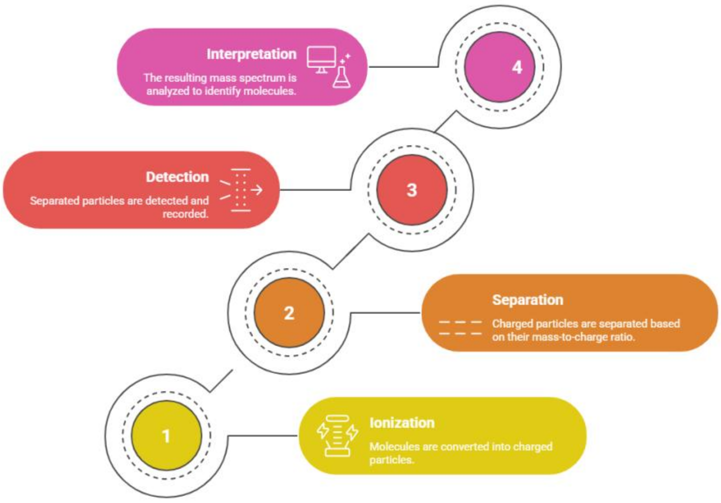


Figure 1: Basic Principle of Mass Spectroscopy

INSTRUMENT COMPONENTS AND ANALYTICAL WORKFLOW

Despite the diversity of MS instruments available today, most of them follow a common workflow: the sample is introduced into the system, ionized, analyzed based on its m/z values, and finally detected. Each of these steps must work together efficiently to generate accurate and meaningful data (Robinson *et al.*, 2014). For plant-based studies, chromatographic separation is usually essential before MS analysis. Complex plant extracts often contain hundreds of compounds, many of which can interfere with one another during ionization. Techniques like gas chromatography (GC) and liquid chromatography (LC) help separate components before they enter the mass spectrometer, improving both sensitivity and clarity of the spectrum (Niessen, 2017). Once the sample reaches the ionization source, it is converted into gas-phase ions. These ions are then transferred into the mass analyzer, which serves as the core of the instrument. Here, ions are separated according to their m/z value using electric or magnetic fields. After separation, the ions reach the detector, which converts their arrival into measurable electrical signals. These signals are assembled into a mass spectrum.

Modern MS instruments rely heavily on advanced software to process the raw data. This is especially important for phytochemicals, because natural extracts often produce overlapping peaks and complex patterns. Software tools handle tasks such as identifying isotopes, aligning retention times, deconvoluting overlapping signals, and matching spectra against reference databases (Wolfender *et al.,* 2015). When the workflow—from sample preparation to data interpretation—is properly optimized, MS becomes an exceptionally powerful technique for characterizing plant metabolites. Instrument Components and Workflow

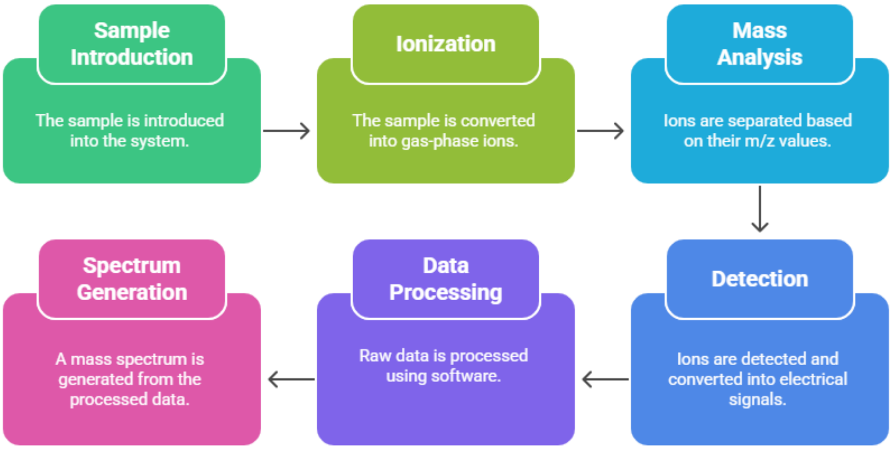


Figure 2: Mass Spectroscopy Working flow

TYPES OF MASS ANALYZERS

The mass analyzer is the heart of any MS system and determines much of the instrument's performance, including resolution, accuracy, and speed. Different analyzers offer different strengths, making them suitable for different types of phytochemical studies. Quadrupole analyzers are among the most widely used because of their reliability, affordability, and suitability for routine analysis. They act as mass filters, allowing only ions of a specific m/z to pass through at a time. Quadrupoles are particularly useful for quantitative applications, such as measuring levels of specific flavonoids, alkaloids, or phenolic acids in plant extracts (Niessen, 2017).

Time-of-Flight (TOF) analyzers provide rapid data collection and high mass accuracy. They measure how long it takes for ions to travel to the detector—lighter ions arrive sooner, and heavier ones arrive later. TOF analyzers are especially beneficial in screening complex mixtures and identifying unexpected or unknown compounds, particularly when paired with ESI or MALDI (Cotter, 1997). Orbitrap analyzers have revolutionized the field by offering extremely high resolution and remarkably accurate mass measurements. These features allow researchers to differentiate between compounds with almost identical masses—an essential requirement in plant metabolomics, where structural isomers are common (Makarov, 2000). Ion trap analyzers, including linear ion traps, can perform multiple rounds of fragmentation (MS^n). This capability allows researchers to peel back the structural layers of a molecule step by step, making it especially useful when studying glycosides, coupling patterns, or distinct ring substitutions in plant compounds (March & Todd, 2005). At the highest end of the performance spectrum is Fourier Transform Ion Cyclotron Resonance (FT-ICR) MS. This instrument provides unrivaled mass accuracy and resolution, making it ideal for investigating extremely complex mixtures such as crude plant extracts, essential oils, and resins (Marshall & Hendrickson, 2008). Though expensive, FT-ICR instruments are often used in advanced metabolomics and natural product discovery. Hybrid instruments—such as Q-TOF, Orbitrap-ion trap, and triple quadrupole-Orbitrap systems—combine the strengths of multiple analyzers into a single platform. These versatile systems support both targeted and untargeted analyses, making them extremely valuable in modern phytochemical research (Scigelova *et al.*, 2011).

Overall, the wide range of mass analyzers available today offers researchers tremendous flexibility. By selecting the appropriate analyzer—or combination of analyzers—scientists can tailor MS methods to specific phytochemical challenges, whether they involve discovering new metabolites, profiling entire extracts, or quantifying specific bioactive compounds.

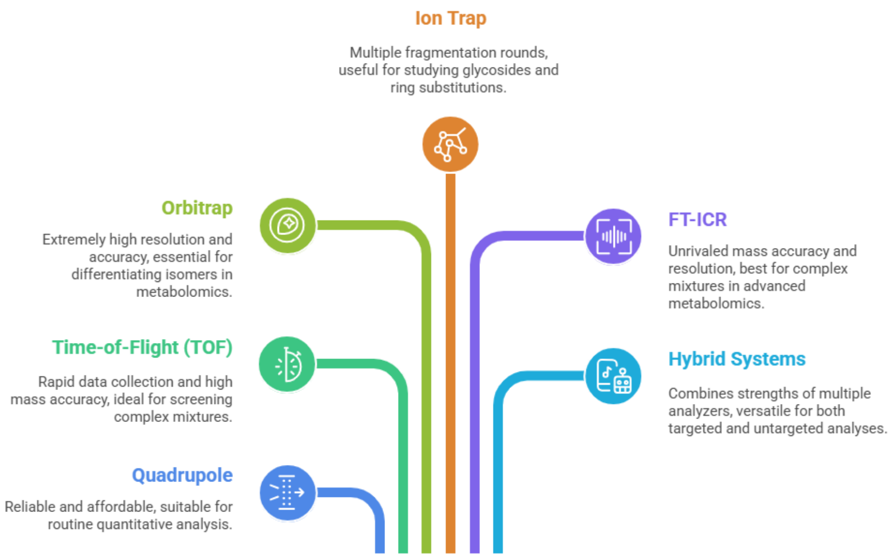


Figure 3: Different types of Mass Analyzer

APPLICATION OF MS IN IDENTIFICATION OF PHYTOCHEMICAL CLASSES

Mass spectrometry has become an indispensable tool in natural products chemistry because phytochemicals are structurally diverse, often present in complex mixtures, and frequently exist at low concentrations. Modern ionization techniques combined with high-resolution MS and tandem mass spectrometry (MS/MS) enable researchers to rapidly identify entire classes of secondary metabolites directly from crude extracts. Each phytochemical class exhibits characteristic ionization behavior, fragmentation patterns, and diagnostic ions, allowing scientists to differentiate them with high confidence (Wolfender *et al.*, 2015). The following sections discuss how mass spectrometry contributes to the identification of major phytochemical classes.

Alkaloids

Alkaloids are nitrogen-containing compounds that ionize efficiently under mass spectrometric conditions, particularly through Electrospray Ionization (ESI). Because alkaloids typically contain basic nitrogen atoms, they readily form protonated ions $[M+H]^+$ in positive-ion mode (Zhou *et al.,* 2011). Their MS/MS spectra often show cleavages adjacent to the nitrogen atom, ring-opening reactions, and loss of small neutrals such as NH_3 or H_2O. These predictable patterns help distinguish different subclasses such as indole alkaloids, isoquinoline alkaloids, pyrrolizidine alkaloids, and tropane alkaloids (Shui & Leong, 2005). High-resolution MS has become particularly valuable for identifying alkaloids in medicinal plants because many exist as isomers differing by only a few mass units. Techniques like LC–ESI–QTOF-MS enable rapid profiling of complex alkaloid mixtures in species such as *Catharanthus*, *Rauvolfia*, and *Papaver* (de Souza *et al.,* 2020). Fragmentation-based molecular networking further helps visualize related structures.

Flavonoids

Flavonoids are widely distributed polyphenolic compounds that show characteristic fragmentation patterns in negative-ion mode. Under ESI conditions, most flavonoids form deprotonated molecules $[M–H]^-$, which undergo predictable Retro-Diels–Alder (RDA) cleavages and neutral losses corresponding to CO, CO_2, and sugar moieties (Ferreres *et al.,* 2008). Aglycones, including quercetin, kaempferol, and luteolin, typically fragment at ring C, yielding diagnostic ions that help identify the substitution pattern. Flavonoid glycosides show additional fragmentation due to loss of hexose (162 Da), deoxyhexose (146 Da), or glucuronic acid (176 Da) units. LC–MS/MS is particularly effective in identifying O-glycosides and distinguishing them from C-glycosides, which fragment differently (Justesen, 2000). High-resolution MS therefore serves as a rapid, sensitive tool for profiling flavonoids in fruits, vegetables, medicinal herbs, and tea.

Terpenoids and Triterpenes

Terpenoids and triterpenes are highly diverse compounds that often require soft ionization for accurate structural elucidation. Volatile monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes are typically analyzed by GC–MS using Electron Ionization (EI), producing rich fragmentation patterns that match well with commercial libraries (Sparkman *et al.,* 2011). EI-MS is excellent for identifying components of essential oils. Nonvolatile diterpenoids, triterpenoids, and tetraterpenoids (carotenoids) are better suited for APCI or ESI. Triterpenes, such as oleanolic acid and ursolic acid, show characteristic neutral losses (e.g., H_2O, CO_2) and fragmentations that reveal ring structures and side-chain configurations (Ma *et al.,* 2019). Saponifiable terpenoids, including many plant hormones and signaling molecules, can be sensitively detected using high-resolution Orbitrap-MS.

Phenolic Compounds

Phenolic acids and simple phenolics ionize readily in negative-ion mode. Their MS/MS spectra display distinct losses, such as CO_2 (44 Da) from carboxyl groups or CH_3 (15 Da) from methoxy substituents (Clifford *et al.,* 2003). Hydroxycinnamic acids—such as caffeic, ferulic, and p-coumaric acids—produce abundant fragment ions that help differentiate them from hydroxybenzoic acids. Ellagitannins and gallotannins, larger members of the polyphenol family, exhibit multiple water losses in MS due to their labile ester linkages. Their high molecular diversity makes LC–MS/MS and high-resolution MS indispensable tools for characterization (Quideau *et al.,* 2011). MS has also improved the identification of antioxidant phenolics in beverages such as tea, coffee, and wine.

Glycosides

Glycosides are compounds in which a sugar moiety is linked to a non-carbohydrate aglycone. In MS, the sugar units typically detach first, producing characteristic neutral losses. For example, O-glycosides lose sugar residues more readily than C-glycosides, which are more stable and show cross-ring cleavages instead (Cuyckens & Claeys, 2004). These differences allow rapid classification of glycosides in plant extracts. Glycosides occur widely in flavonoids, saponins, anthraquinones, terpenoids, and phenolic acids. LC–ESI–MS/MS is widely used to identify glycosides in herbal medicines such as *Ginkgo biloba*, *Panax ginseng*, and *Terminalia arjuna*. High-resolution instruments help determine exact compositions, even when multiple sugars are attached.

Steroids

Plant steroids—including phytosterols, steroidal alkaloids, and cardiac glycosides—require careful MS analysis because many are nonpolar and have similar mass ranges. GC–MS is useful for volatile or derivatized sterols, providing fragmentation pathways that reveal side-chain features (Liu *et al.,* 2007). In contrast, steroidal saponins and glycosides require LC–ESI–MS because of their high polarity.MS/MS fragmentation of steroidal compounds typically reveals characteristic cleavages around ring structures, loss of sugar units in glycosides, and specific rearrangement ions. High-resolution MS is especially valuable for differentiating isomeric phytosterols such as β-sitosterol, stigmasterol, and campesterol.

Coumarins

Coumarins, benzopyrone derivatives common in many medicinal plants, show excellent ionization in both positive and negative mode. Their fragmentation patterns often involve the loss of CO (28 Da), CO_2 (44 Da), or small neutral molecules, making their MS/MS spectra quite distinctive (Pereira *et al.,* 2020). Prenylated coumarins and furanocoumarins display additional fragmentation reflecting their extended aromatic systems.LC–MS/MS has enabled large-scale profiling of coumarins in species such as *Citrus*, *Angelica*, and *Peucedanum*. Because coumarins possess UV-absorbing chromophores, MS combined with photodiode array detection provides enhanced structural insight.

Saponins and Other Secondary Metabolites

Saponins are complex glycosides consisting of triterpenoid or steroidal aglycones attached to one or more sugar units. Their high polarity makes them ideal candidates for ESI-MS. The MS/MS spectra of saponins exhibit sequential loss of sugar moieties, which provides clues about the number, type, and arrangement of sugar residues (Sahu *et al.*, 2017). The aglycone core can also be identified by its characteristic fragmentation patterns. Other secondary metabolites—including lignans, stilbenes, anthraquinones, and glucosinolates—show class-specific MS behavior. For example, glucosinolates undergo distinctive losses of sulfate groups, while anthraquinones show predictable neutral losses and ring cleavages. High-resolution mass spectrometry combined with MS^n fragmentation enables the rapid classification and identification of these diverse metabolites in complex plant matrices (Wolfender *et al.*, 2013).

Table 1: Applications of Mass Spectrometry in Identification of Major Phytochemical Classes

Sr. No	Phytochemical Class	Key Structural Features Identified by MS	Common Ionization Techniques Used	Typical Fragmentation Behavior	Example Studies / Citations
1	Alkaloids	Nitrogen-containing heterocycles; distinction between tertiary and quaternary alkaloids; molecular formula determination	ESI, APCI, EI	Cleavage of C–N bonds, loss of methyl groups, characteristic nitrogen-containing fragments	Wang *et al.* (2018)
2	Flavonoids	Flavone, flavonol, flavanone cores; identification of aglycones and glycosylation patterns	ESI, APCI, MALDI	RDA fragmentation; loss of sugar moieties (−162 Da, −146 Da)	Cuyckens & Claeys (2004)
3	Terpenoids / Triterpenes	Sesquiterpene, diterpene, triterpene skeletons; oxidation/hydroxylation states	EI, APCI, ESI	Loss of isoprene units; terpene chain cleavage; ring fragmentation	Gao *et al.* (2020)

4	Phenolic Compounds	Phenolic acids, tannins, stilbenes; determination of hydroxylation patterns	ESI, APCI	Neutral loss of CO_2 (−44 Da); water loss; aromatic ring cleavage	Lin *et al.* (2016)
5	Glycosides	Sugar moieties (hexose, deoxyhexose, pentose); aglycone identification; glycosidic linkage characterization	ESI, MALDI	Sequential sugar losses; cleavage of glycosidic bonds; formation of $[M-H]^-$ ions	Qiu *et al.* (2012)
6	Steroids	Steroid nucleus (C27–C30); side-chain variation; unsaturation patterns	EI, APCI	Ring cleavage; dehydration; formation of key diagnostic ions	Willför *et al.* (2004)
7	Coumarins	Lactone ring; benzopyrone scaffold; substitution pattern identification	ESI, APCI	Loss of CO (−28 Da) and CO_2 (−44 Da); ring-breaking	Ma *et al.* (2021)
8	Saponins & Other Secondary Metabolites	High-molecular-weight glycosides; multiple sugar chains; triterpenoid/steroidal aglycones	ESI, MALDI	Sequential sugar losses; sapogenin-core fragmentation	Qi *et al.* (2011)

HYPHENATED TECHNIQUES IN PHYTOCHEMICAL ANALYSIS

The chemical diversity found in plants is extraordinary. A single plant extract may contain hundreds or even thousands of secondary metabolites—alkaloids, flavonoids, terpenoids, phenolics, glycosides, saponins, and others—many of which occur in very low concentrations. Traditional analytical methods used in pharmacognosy often fall short in resolving such complexity. Hyphenated techniques—advanced analytical platforms that merge separation technologies (like GC, LC, CE) with structural identification tools (like MS or NMR)—have emerged as powerful solutions to this challenge. These methods allow simultaneous separation, detection, quantification, and often structural elucidation of multiple compounds in a single run. As a result, hyphenated tools have become indispensable in phytochemical characterization, metabolomics, drug discovery, and quality assessment of herbal products

(Wolfender *et al.*, 2019; Efferth & Oesch, 2021). Hyphenated systems not only enhance analytical power but also provide researchers with higher confidence in identifying unknown compounds, including metabolites with similar molecular weights or structural isomers. With high sensitivity, resolution, and selectivity, platforms such as GC–MS, LC–MS/MS, CE–MS, and MS–NMR have profoundly transformed the workflow of natural product chemistry.

GC–MS FOR VOLATILE PHYTOCHEMICALS

Gas chromatography–mass spectrometry (GC–MS) is one of the most established hyphenated techniques in natural product chemistry, especially for profiling volatile and semi-volatile phytochemicals. GC allows the separation of compounds based on their volatility and interaction with the column's stationary phase, while the MS component provides structural information through fragmentation patterns. This combination makes GC–MS particularly powerful for identifying essential oil constituents, terpenes, aldehydes, ketones, and small aromatic molecules that occur widely in medicinal plants (Mondello *et al.*, 2015). In phytochemical research, GC–MS is often the first-choice method for plants rich in volatile oils, such as Mentha, Ocimum, Cinnamomum, and Eucalyptus. The mass spectra produced are compared against established spectral libraries such as NIST or Wiley, enabling rapid identification even in complex mixtures. Additionally, derivatization techniques—such as silylation or methylation—can be applied to convert thermally unstable or polar plant metabolites into more volatile forms suitable for GC analysis (Sparkman *et al.*, 2011). Despite its strengths, GC–MS is limited to compounds that can withstand high temperatures and are inherently volatile. Thus, larger and more polar phytochemicals such as glycosides, phenolic acids, and alkaloids often require alternative platforms. Nonetheless, GC–MS remains indispensable for chemotaxonomic studies, aroma profiling, and quality control of essential-oil-based herbal formulations.

LC–MS AND LC–MS/MS FOR NON-VOLATILE METABOLITES

Liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry (LC–MS) has emerged as the most versatile tool for phytochemical analysis because it accommodates a broad range of polar, thermolabile, and high-molecular-weight natural products. LC–MS enables soft ionization approaches, especially electrospray ionization (ESI) and atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI), which preserve molecular ions and provide intact mass information crucial for structural elucidation (Niessen, 2017).LC–MS/MS, which incorporates tandem mass spectrometry, greatly enhances specificity and sensitivity. Through multiple reactions monitoring (MRM), precursor ions are fragmented into product ions that offer unique structural fingerprints. This is particularly valuable in studying complex molecules such as flavonoids, alkaloids, phenolic acids, saponins, and glycosylated metabolites, where fragmentation pathways provide clues about sugar moieties, aglycone structures, and conjugation patterns (Guo *et al.*, 2018).High-resolution platforms such as quadrupole time-of-flight (QTOF) and Orbitrap MS allow accurate mass measurements within a few parts per million (ppm), enabling de novo identification of unknown phytochemicals from plant extracts. LC–MS has also become essential in metabolomics, enabling comparative profiling between plant varieties, stress conditions, and geographical origins. Its ability to handle crude extracts with minimal sample preparation makes it a premier tool for modern natural product discovery.

CE–MS (CAPILLARY ELECTROPHORESIS–MS)

Capillary electrophoresis–mass spectrometry (CE–MS) is a powerful yet underutilized hyphenated technique in phytochemical analysis. Unlike chromatography-based systems, CE separates compounds based on their electrophoretic mobility, making it ideal for highly polar, charged, and small-molecule phytochemicals such as amino acids, organic acids, alkaloids, and phenolic acids (Monton & Soga, 2007). The coupling of CE with MS, typically through electrospray ionization interfaces, enhances detection sensitivity and structural characterization capability. CE–MS provides exceptional separation efficiency, often superior to LC–MS, particularly for isomers and closely related ionic metabolites. Its low solvent consumption and eco-friendly operation make it attractive for green analytical chemistry practices. However, CE–MS requires sophisticated interfaces and has relatively lower robustness compared to LC–MS, which limits widespread adoption. Despite these challenges, CE–MS has successfully been used in profiling phytochemicals in traditional medicinal plants, examining antioxidant compounds, and studying metabolic fingerprints in functional foods.

MS–NMR PLATFORMS IN STRUCTURE ELUCIDATION

MS–NMR hyphenated systems represent one of the most advanced techniques available for structural elucidation in natural products research. Individually, MS provides elemental composition and fragmentation data, while nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) offers unparalleled structural detail about proton and carbon environments. When integrated, MS–NMR creates a synergistic platform capable of solving highly complex phytochemical structures, even in low abundance (Wolfender *et al.*, 2019).In practical applications, MS–NMR is often conducted in an offline mode, where MS guides the isolation of target molecules that are subsequently analyzed by NMR. Advanced techniques such as LC–NMR–MS allow on-flow characterization directly from chromatographic peaks, reducing the need for extensive purification. This is particularly beneficial for unstable or low-content phytochemicals. These platforms are especially useful for dereplication—rapidly distinguishing known molecules from novel ones—thus accelerating the discovery of new natural products. MS–NMR has been used successfully in the structural elucidation of alkaloids, flavonoids, terpenoids, and marine natural products that exhibit complex stereochemistry.

ADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS OF HYPHENATED METHODS

Hyphenated techniques have transformed phytochemical analysis by combining high separation efficiency with rich structural data. GC–MS and LC–MS/MS provide rapid, sensitive, and selective identification of chemical constituents, while CE–MS offers unmatched separation of polar and ionic metabolites. MS–NMR platforms add an extra layer of structural confirmation, enabling unequivocal identification of complex phytochemicals. Together, these techniques support high-throughput screening, chemotaxonomy, metabolomics, and new natural product discovery (Streit *et al.,* 2020). However, each method comes with limitations. GC–MS is restricted to volatile and thermally stable metabolites. LC–MS often struggles with isomeric compounds that require MS/MS expertise to interpret. CE–MS requires specialized interfaces and has reproducibility challenges. MS–NMR platforms, although powerful, are expensive and technically demanding, limiting routine use. Nevertheless, the combined power of hyphenated techniques continues to push the frontier of natural products chemistry, offering deeper insights into plant metabolomes and accelerating the discovery of bioactive phytochemicals.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

The future of mass spectrometry in phytochemical research looks incredibly promising, driven by advances that are making the technique more powerful, more intuitive, and more accessible than ever before. One of the most exciting areas of progress is in high-resolution mass spectrometry (HRMS). Instruments like Orbitrap and FT-ICR MS continue to push the limits of what scientists can resolve and identify in complex botanical extracts. Their ability to measure masses with outstanding precision has made it possible to identify metabolites that differ by only tiny fractions of a Dalton—differences that were impossible to distinguish just a decade ago (Marshall & Hendrickson, 2008). Even more encouraging is the growing integration of ion mobility spectrometry with HRMS. Innovations such as trapped ion mobility spectrometry (TIMS) are allowing researchers to separate phytochemicals based not only on mass, but also on their three-dimensional structures and shapes (Ridgeway *et al.,* 2018). This kind of multidimensional data is likely to become standard in future workflows, especially when dealing with isomers or complex mixtures where traditional MS alone falls short.

Alongside instrumental advances, the rapid rise of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) is reshaping how scientists interpret mass spectral data. Traditionally, decoding fragmentation patterns or identifying unknown metabolites required specialized expertise and long hours of manual work. Now, deep learning models are being trained on vast spectral libraries to predict structures, annotate unknown compounds, and even suggest biosynthetic origins (Bittremieux *et al.,* 2022). These tools are becoming indispensable in metabolomics studies, where datasets can contain thousands of features from different plant tissues, species, or environmental conditions. AI is also proving incredibly valuable in ensuring the authenticity and consistency of herbal materials. For example, machine-learning-driven MS fingerprinting can detect adulteration or mislabeling in plant-derived products far more reliably than traditional chemical tests (Sindelar & Patti, 2020). As these algorithms continue to learn from expanding datasets, they will likely evolve from assisting researchers to fully automating many stages of data interpretation. Phytochemical fingerprinting itself is also heading toward a much more sophisticated future. Modern LC-MS/MS and HRMS technologies already allow scientists to capture highly detailed chemical profiles that reflect the unique biochemical signatures of plants—signatures that can change with species, climate, soil composition, or cultivation methods (Wolfender *et al.*, 2019). These fingerprints are critical for everything from authenticating medicinal plants to mapping chemo types or understanding how environmental stress influences secondary metabolism. Emerging tools like MS imaging and advanced ion mobility techniques will add a new layer of spatial and structural detail to these fingerprints, making it possible not only to know what chemicals are present, but also where exactly they accumulate within the plant. This kind of insight could transform our understanding of biosynthesis, plant defense mechanisms, and tissue-specific accumulation of medicinally important compounds.

A final and equally important element of future progress lies in expanding and improving MS-based phytochemical databases. Although existing repositories like MassBank, METLIN, GNPS, and NIST are invaluable, they represent only a small fraction of the enormous diversity of natural products found in the plant kingdom. Many species remain chemically unexplored, especially those from biodiversity-rich regions such as South Asia, the Amazon, and parts of Africa. Building larger, more comprehensive, and better-annotated databases will require coordinated international contributions of high-quality MS/MS data, retention information, and metadata about plant origin, extraction method, and biosynthetic context (Horai *et al.*, 2010). Community-based tools such as GNPS are showing how powerful collaborative curation can be, particularly with molecular networking tools that allow researchers around the world to recognize structural families and discover new natural products together. Future databases will likely incorporate AI-driven features such as automated spectral validation, predicted fragmentation libraries, and deeper integration with genomic and metabolomic datasets. Taken together, these developments point toward a future where mass spectrometry becomes even more central to natural product research. We are moving toward an era of ultrahigh-resolution instrumentation, intelligent automated data processing, and globally connected reference libraries—all working together to uncover the chemical richness of plants. For researchers in phytochemistry, this means faster discovery, more accurate identification, and a much deeper understanding of the molecules that define plant diversity and medicinal value. The coming years will likely see mass spectrometry evolve from a powerful analytical tool into an integrated, almost intuitive platform that drives new discovery in plant science.

CONCLUSION

Mass spectrometry has become an indispensable tool in phytochemical research, offering exceptional accuracy, sensitivity, and structural clarity that help scientists unravel the complex chemical makeup of medicinal and nutritional plants. With rapid advances in high-resolution instruments, researchers can now identify even trace-level metabolites with confidence, opening new possibilities for discovering novel bioactive compounds. At the same time, the growing integration of artificial intelligence and machine learning is making MS data interpretation faster, smarter and more intuitive, reducing analytical challenges and improving pattern recognition across large datasets. Improvements in phytochemical fingerprinting are strengthening the authentication and quality control of herbal products, while the steady expansion of MS-based databases is ensuring easier, more reliable access to reference spectra from diverse plant sources. Altogether, these developments highlight a promising future where mass spectrometry continues to evolve as a cornerstone of natural product research, deepening our understanding of plant chemistry and supporting innovations in medicine, food science, and biotechnology.

REFERENCES

[1]. Bittremieux, W., Meysman, P., & Martens, L. (2022). Machine learning for protein and metabolite identification in mass spectrometry. *Nature Methods, 19*(7), 810–820.

[2]. Clifford, M. N., Johnston, K. L., Knight, S., & Kuhnert, N. (2003). Hierarchical scheme for LC-MS^n identification of chlorogenic acids. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 51*(10), 2900–2911.

[3]. Cotter, R. J. (1997). *Time-of-flight mass spectrometry: Instrumentation and applications in biological research*. American Chemical Society.

[4]. Cuyckens, F., & Claeys, M. (2004). Mass spectrometry in the structural analysis of flavonoids. *Journal of Mass Spectrometry, 39*(1), 1–15.

[5]. de Hoffmann, E., & Stroobant, V. (2019). *Mass spectrometry: Principles and applications* (4th ed.). Wiley.

[6]. de Souza, L. M., Dartora, N., Correa, V. G., & Scopel, M. (2020). LC–MS-based analysis of alkaloids in medicinal plants. *Phytochemical Analysis, 31*(2), 127–140.

[7]. Dewick, P. M. (2009). *Medicinal natural products: A biosynthetic approach* (3rd ed.). Wiley.

[8]. Ferreres, F., Gil-Izquierdo, A., Andrade, P. B., & Valentão, P. (2008). Mass spectrometric techniques to study flavonoids. *Journal of Pharmaceutical and Biomedical Analysis, 48*(2), 558–568.

[9]. Gao, X., Guo, X., Liu, Y., & Zhang, D. (2020). Mass spectrometric techniques for profiling terpenoids in medicinal plants. *Phytochemical Analysis, 31*(5), 509–520.*

[10]. Gross, J. H. (2017). *Mass spectrometry: A textbook* (3rd ed.). Springer.

[11]. Guo, X., Zhang, J., & Wu, S. (2018). Advances in LC–MS and LC–MS/MS analysis of polyphenols in plants. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1565*, 1–12.

[12]. Harvey, A. L., Edrada-Ebel, R., & Quinn, R. J. (2015). The re-emergence of natural products for drug discovery in the genomics era. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 14*(2), 111–129.

[13]. Horai, H., Arita, M., Kanaya, S., Nihei, Y., Ikeda, T., Suwa, K., & Tanaka, K. (2010). MassBank: A public repository for sharing mass spectral data for life sciences. *Journal of Mass Spectrometry, 45*(7), 703–714.

[14]. Justesen, U. (2000). Negative ion APCI-MS/MS for the analysis of flavonoids. *Journal of Chromatography A, 902*(2), 369–379.

[15]. Lei, Z., Huhman, D. V., & Sumner, L. W. (2011). Mass spectrometry strategies in metabolomics. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry, 286*(29), 25435–25442.

[16]. Lin, L., Ni, B., Lin, H., Zhang, M., Yan, X., & Yang, D. (2016). Rapid characterization of phenolic acids using LC–ESI-MS/MS. *Food Chemistry, 192*, 345–352.

[17]. Liu, H., Liu, Y., & Gao, Y. (2007). Analysis of phytosterols by GC–MS. *Food Chemistry, 102*(1), 171–176.

[18]. Ma, X., Wang, S., Yu, Q., & Zhang, Y. (2021). MS/MS fragmentation of coumarins and furanocoumarins. *Rapid Communications in Mass Spectrometry, 35*(5), e8995.

[19]. Ma, Y., Li, X., Zhang, Y., & Li, Y. (2019). Fragmentation patterns of triterpenoids in MS/MS. *Rapid Communications in Mass Spectrometry, 33*(3), 205–214.

[20]. Makarov, A. (2000). Electrostatic axially harmonic orbital trapping: A high-performance technique of mass analysis. *Analytical Chemistry, 72*(6), 1156–1162.

[21]. March, R. E., & Todd, J. F. J. (2005). *Quadrupole ion trap mass spectrometry* (2nd ed.). Wiley.

[22]. Marshall, A. G., & Hendrickson, C. L. (2008). High-resolution mass spectrometers. *Annual Review of Analytical Chemistry, 1*, 579–599.

[23]. Mondello, L., Casilli, A., Tranchida, P. Q., & Dugo, G. (2015). Comprehensive GC–MS analysis in essential oil research. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1384*, 1–17.

[24]. Monton, M. R., & Soga, T. (2007). Metabolome analysis by capillary electrophoresis–mass spectrometry. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1168*, 237–251.

[25]. Newman, D. J., & Cragg, G. M. (2020). Natural products as sources of new drugs over the nearly four decades from 1981 to 2019. *Journal of Natural Products, 83*(3), 770–803.

[26]. Niessen, W. M. A. (2017). *Liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry* (3rd ed.). CRC Press.

[27]. Pereira, R. C., Silva, B. J., & Amorim, L. V. (2020). Coumarins: Mass spectrometry approaches. *Phytochemistry Reviews, 19*(3), 657–676.

[28]. Pluskal, T., Castillo, S., Villar-Briones, A., & Oresic, M. (2010). MZmine 2: Modular framework for processing mass spectrometry–based molecular profile data. *BMC Bioinformatics, 11*, 395.

[29]. Qi, L. W., Wang, C. Z., & Yuan, C. S. (2011). Ginsenosides and their metabolites: Characterization by LC/MS. *Journal of Chromatography B, 878*(32), 3221–3231.

[30]. Qiu, F., Friesen, J. B., McAlpine, J. B., & Pauli, G. F. (2012). Structural analysis of glycosides using mass spectrometry. *Analytical Chemistry, 84*(16), 7812–7819.

[31]. Quideau, S., Deffieux, D., Douat-Casassus, C., & Pouységu, L. (2011). Plant polyphenols: Chemical properties, biological activities, and identification by MS. *Natural Product Reports, 28*(11), 1825–1843.

[32]. Ridgeway, M. E., Lubeck, M., Jordens, J., Mann, M., & Park, M. A. (2018). Trapped ion mobility spectrometry: A breakthrough in laboratory-based mass spectrometry. *Analytical Chemistry, 90*(2), 133–156.

[33]. Robinson, J. W., Frame, E. M. S., & Frame II, G. M. (2014). *Undergraduate instrumental analysis*. CRC Press.

[34]. Sahu, N. P., Koike, K., & Achari, B. (2017). Structural characterization of saponins using ESI-MS/MS. *Phytochemistry, 142*, 98–109.

[35]. Scigelova, M., Hornshaw, M., Giannakopulos, A., & Makarov, A. (2011). Fourier transform mass spectrometry. *Molecular & Cellular Proteomics, 10*(7), M111.009431.

[36]. Shui, G., & Leong, L. P. (2005). Separation and identification of alkaloids by LC–MS. *Analytical and Bioanalytical Chemistry, 381*(5), 1219–1228.

[37]. Sindelar, M., & Patti, G. J. (2020). Chemical discovery in metabolomics. *Journal of the American Chemical Society, 142*(20), 9097–9105.

[38]. Siuzdak, G. (2006). *The expanding role of mass spectrometry in biotechnology* (2nd ed.). MCC Press.

[39]. Smith, R. D., Payne, S. H., & Gidden, J. (2014). High-resolution mass spectrometry: Instrumentation and data analysis. *Annual Review of Analytical Chemistry, 7*, 499–522.

[40]. Sparkman, O. D., Penton, Z., & Kitson, F. (2011). *Gas Chromatography and Mass Spectrometry: A Practical Guide* (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

[41]. Sparkman, O. D., Penton, Z., & Kitson, F. G. (2011). *Gas chromatography and mass spectrometry: A practical guide* (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

[42]. Sparkman, O. D., Penton, Z., & Kitson, F. G. (2011). *Gas chromatography and mass spectrometry* (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

[43]. Streit, B., Kries, H., & Seidel, T. (2020). Hyphenated analytical techniques for natural products research. *Natural Product Reports, 37*(7), 1024–1042.

[44]. Tautenhahn, R., Patti, G. J., Rinehart, D., & Siuzdak, G. (2012). XCMS Online: A web-based platform for processing untargeted metabolomic data. *Analytical Chemistry, 84*(11), 5035–5039.

[45]. Wang, H., Sun, H., Liu, T., & Yang, L. (2018). Alkaloid profiling in plant extracts using LC–MS/MS technologies. *Phytochemistry Reviews, 17*(1), 125–148.*

[46]. Wang, M., Carver, J. J., Phelan, V. V., *et al.* (2016). Sharing and community curation of mass spectrometry data with GNPS. *Nature Biotechnology, 34*(8), 828–837.

[47]. Willför, S., Hemming, J., Reunanen, M., & Holmbom, B. (2004). Analysis of phytosterols by mass spectrometry. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1023*(1), 77–85.*

[48]. Wolfender, J.-L., Marti, G., Thomas, A., & Bertrand, S. (2015). Current approaches and challenges for the metabolite profiling of complex natural extracts. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1382*, 136–164.

[49]. Wolfender, J.-L., Marti, G., Thomas, A., & Bertrand, S. (2015). Current MS approaches for profiling complex natural extracts. *Journal of Chromatography A, 1382*, 136–164.

[50]. Wolfender, J.-L., Nuzillard, J.-M., Van Der Hooft, J. J. J., Renault, J.-H., & Bertrand, S. (2019). Accelerating natural product research with metabolomics and computational tools. *Natural Product Reports, 36*(5), 885–916.

[51]. Wolfender, J.-L., Queiroz, E. F., & Nguyen, V. (2019). Advances in dereplication strategies and hyphenated techniques for natural products discovery. *Chemical Reviews, 119*(12), 6536–6620.

[52]. Wolfender, J.-L., Queiroz, E. F., Hostettmann, K. (2013). Mass spectrometry in phytochemical analysis. *Phytochemistry, 91*, 29–36.

[53]. Wolfender, J.-L., Rudaz, S., Choi, Y. H., & Kim, H. K. (2013). Plant metabolomics: From holistic data to relevant biomarkers. *Current Medicinal Chemistry, 20*(8), 1056–1090.

[54]. Zhou, M., & Zare, R. N. (2019). Personal mass spectrometry for point-of-care analysis. *Trends in Analytical Chemistry, 116*, 44–53.

Chapter
15

FROM PLANTS TO DEFENSE: ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTIBACTERIAL BIOACTIVES

SEETHALAXMI RADHAKRISHNA

Surana College, South End Circle, Bangalore, Karnataka

INTRODUCTION

Plants produce a rich palette of secondary metabolites—collectively called phytochemicals—that plays defensive roles in plants and has long served as sources of therapeutic agents for humans. Interest in phytochemicals that combine anti-inflammatory and antibacterial activities has surged recently because many chronic and infectious diseases involve intersecting pathways of inflammation and microbial infection; moreover, increasing antimicrobial resistance has driven the search for alternative or adjunctive therapies derived from natural products. Recent reviews and experimental studies emphasize that phytochemicals can modulate key inflammatory signaling cascades while directly inhibiting or weakening pathogenic microbes, including biofilm communities, making them attractive leads for new therapeutics and adjuvants.

Inflammation is a complex physiological response triggered by harmful stimuli such as pathogens, damaged cells, or irritants. It is primarily mediated by immune cells, cytokines, and various signaling pathways. Phytochemicals derived from medicinal plants exhibit potent anti-inflammatory activity through multiple mechanisms, including inhibition of pro-inflammatory mediators, modulation of signaling pathways, and regulation of gene expression.

MAJOR CLASSES OF PHYTOCHEMICALS WITH DUAL ACTIVITY

Several chemical classes repeatedly appear in the literature as possessing both anti-inflammatory and antibacterial properties: polyphenols (flavonoids, phenolic acids, and tannins), alkaloids, terpenoids and essential oils, and chalcones / other polyketides.

Flavonoids and phenolics (e.g., quercetin, kaempferol, catechins, curcumin family) exert antioxidant effects, scavenge reactive oxygen species, and modulate signaling molecules such as NF-κB and MAPKs to reduce proinflammatory cytokine production. These same compounds often disrupt bacterial membranes, chelate metal ions critical for microbial enzymes, or inhibit enzymatic processes required for microbial growth. Recent comprehensive reviews and experimental profiling show flavonoid-rich extracts frequently demonstrate both activities in vitro and in vivo.

Alkaloids (e.g., berberine) display potent antibacterial actions—membrane perturbation, nucleic acid or protein synthesis interference—and some alkaloids reduce inflammation by down regulating inducible enzymes (e.g., COX-2, iNOS) and cytokines. Berberine and related isoquinoline alkaloids remain among the most studied for dual utility.

Terpenoids and essential oils (thymol, eugenol, carvacrol, linalool) are strongly antibacterial via membrane solubilization and permeability changes; they also inhibit inflammatory mediator release in multiple models. Newer surveys document that well-characterized essential oil components retain clinical promise when formulated appropriately to limit volatility and cytotoxicity.

Chalcones and other polyketides show a variety of modes—enzyme inhibition, metal chelation, and oxidative stress modulation—making them useful scaffolds for further medicinal chemistry. Recent targeted reviews highlight chalcones' anti-inflammatory signaling effects alongside antibacterial and antibiofilm activities.

Table 1: Examples of Anti-Inflammatory Phytochemicals and Their Targets

Phytochemical	Plant Source	Primary Target(s)	Effect on Inflammation
Curcumin	*Curcuma longa*	COX, NF-κB, NLRP3	Reduces prostaglandin synthesis, cytokine expression
Quercetin	Onion, Tea	LOX, MAPK	Inhibits leukotriene synthesis, suppresses p38 MAPK
Resveratrol	Grapes	NF-κB, IKK	Blocks NF-κB activation
EGCG	Green Tea	NF-κB, MAPK	Reduces cytokine expression
Berberine	*Berberis vulgaris*	NLRP3 inflammasome	Reduces IL-1β release
Baicalin	*Scutellaria baicalensis*	Nrf2, HO-1	Antioxidant & anti-inflammatory action
Boswellic acids	*Boswellia serrata*	TNF-α, IL-6	Suppresses pro-inflammatory cytokines
Gingerols	*Zingiber officinale*	IL-1β, IL-6	Reduces acute inflammation

MODE OF ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTION

Phytochemicals mediate anti-inflammatory effects through overlapping molecular mechanisms:

Antioxidant activity — by scavenging ROS and upregulating endogenous antioxidant defenses (e.g., Nrf2-ARE pathway), phytochemicals limits oxidative stress that amplifies inflammation. This antioxidant property often underpins observed reductions in inflammatory markers in cellular and animal models.

Inhibition of proinflammatory transcription factors — many compounds suppress NF-κB activation, lowering transcription of TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6, COX-2, and iNOS. Flavonoids and curcuminoids are well documented to interfere with upstream kinases and IκB degradation.

Enzyme modulation — direct inhibition of cyclooxygenase (COX) and lipoxygenase (LOX) pathways reduces proinflammatory eicosanoids; select phytochemicals act as partial enzyme inhibitors or allosteric modulators.

Immune cell regulation — phytochemicals can alter macrophage polarization (M1 → M2 shift), reduce neutrophil infiltration, or limit dendritic cell maturation, contributing to an overall dampening of chronic inflammatory responses.

MECHANISMS OF ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTION

Inflammation is a multifaceted biological process triggered by the immune system in response to harmful agents like pathogens, injured cells, or irritants. This defense mechanism is mainly regulated by immune cells, cytokines, and intricate signaling pathways. While acute inflammation is a protective process, chronic inflammation is implicated in the progression of several diseases including rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, cardiovascular disorders, diabetes, and cancer.

CELLULAR COMPONENTS OF INFLAMMATION

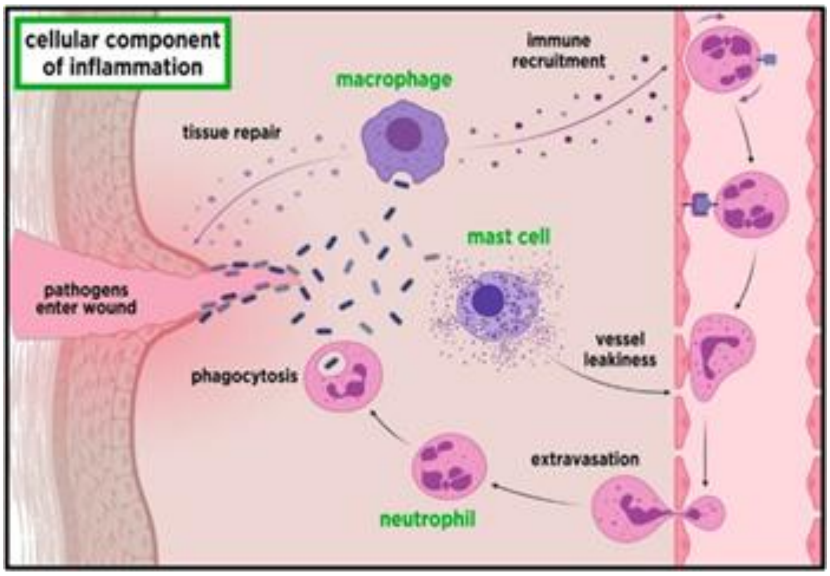


Figure 1: Mechanistic pathways illustrating the anti-inflammatory actions of phytochemicals through COX/LOX inhibition, NF-κB suppression, cytokine modulation, ROS scavenging, NLRP3 inflammasome inhibition, and leukocyte adhesion control (adapted from Nature Reviews Immunology, 2024; Frontiers in Pharmacology, 2025).

Phytochemicals, the bioactive compounds derived from plants, exhibit potent anti-inflammatory properties through multiple mechanisms, including inhibition of pro-inflammatory mediators, modulation of signaling pathways, and regulation of gene expression by modulating various cellular and molecular pathways that regulate inflammatory responses.

INHIBITION OF PRO-INFLAMMATORY ENZYMES

One of the primary mechanisms of anti-inflammatory action of phytochemicals is the inhibition of **cyclooxygenase (COX)** and **lipoxygenase (LOX)** enzymes. These enzymes are responsible for the synthesis of prostaglandins and leukotrienes—key mediators of inflammation.

COX AND LOX ENZYME INHIBITION

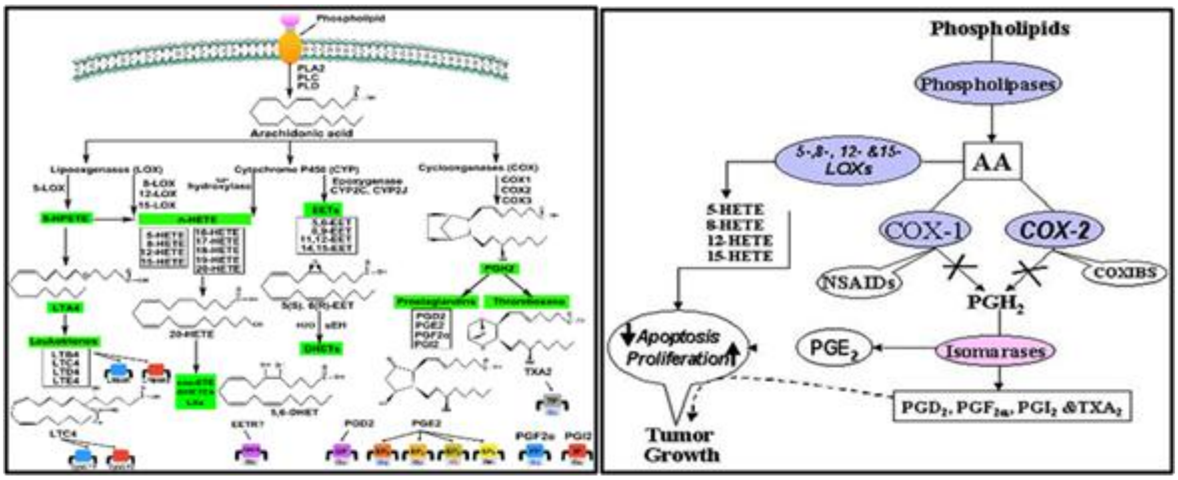


Figure 2: Modulation of COX and LOX pathways. Phytochemicals such as curcumin and quercetin inhibit COX-2 and 5-LOX enzymes, resulting in decreased synthesis of prostaglandins and leukotrienes, and suppression of the inflammatory cascade (Singh *et al.*, 2024)

For instance, curcumin, a polyphenol from *Curcuma longa*, down regulates COX-2 and LOX expression, thereby reducing prostaglandin E2 levels (Singh *et al.*, 2024). Similarly, quercetin from *Allium cepa* and *Camellia sinensis* has been shown to inhibit 5-LOX activity, resulting in decreased leukotriene synthesis and reduced recruitment of neutrophils to the site of inflammation.

MODULATION OF NF-KB SIGNALING PATHWAY

The nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κB) pathway plays a central role in the regulation of inflammatory responses by controlling the expression of cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6. Under inflammatory stimuli, NF-κB translocates to the nucleus and activates transcription of pro-inflammatory genes.

Phytochemicals such as resveratrol (from grapes) and epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) (from green tea) suppress NF-κB activation by inhibiting IκB kinase (IKK) activity and preventing the degradation of IκBα, the inhibitory subunit of NF-κB. This results in reduced transcription of inflammatory cytokines (Patel & Zhao, 2025).

SUPPRESSION OF PRO-INFLAMMATORY CYTOKINES

Many phytochemicals exert anti-inflammatory effects by suppressing the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, including TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-1β. Boswellic acids from *Boswellia serrata*, for example, inhibit TNF-α production in activated macrophages, while gingerols from

Zingiber officinale reduce IL-1β and IL-6 levels, thereby attenuating both acute and chronic inflammation (Kumar *et al.*, 2024).

κB Pathway Inhibition

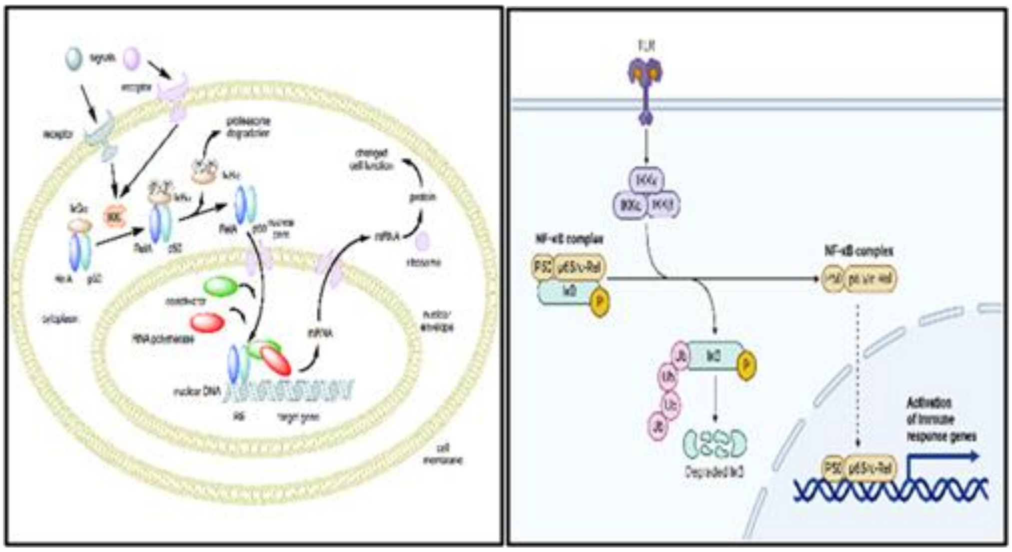


Figure 3: Inhibition of NF-κB signaling pathway by phytochemicals. Bioactive compounds such as curcumin and resveratrol suppress IκB kinase (IKK) activity, prevent IκBα degradation, and block NF-κB translocation into the nucleus, leading to down regulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines (TNF-α, IL-6, IL-1β). (Singh *et al.*, 2024; Patel & Zhao, 2025)

REGULATION OF OXIDATIVE STRESS AND NRF2 PATHWAY ACTIVATION

Inflammation is closely linked to oxidative stress, where excess reactive oxygen species (ROS) amplify inflammatory signaling. Several phytochemicals act as antioxidants by scavenging ROS and activating the Nrf2 pathway, which upregulate the expression of antioxidant enzymes such as heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1) and superoxide dismutase (SOD).

For example, baicalin from *Scutellaria baicalensis* activates Nrf2, leading to increased HO-1 expression and suppression of oxidative stress-induced inflammation (Zhang *et al.*, 2025).

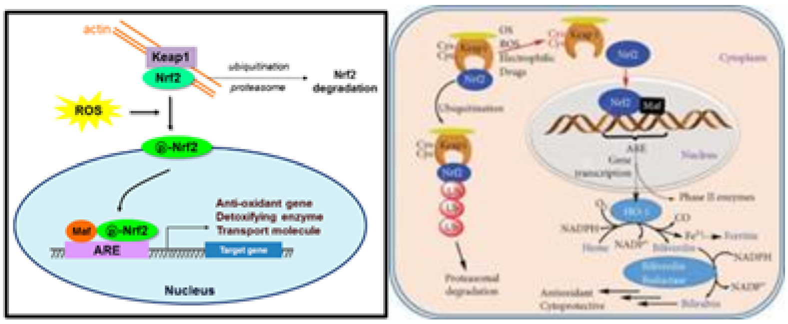


Figure 4: Activation of the Nrf2/HO-1 antioxidant pathway. Phytochemicals such as baicalin and EGCG promote Nrf2 nuclear translocation, which binds to antioxidant response elements (ARE), inducing HO-1 and other antioxidant genes, thereby reducing ROS-mediated inflammation. (Zhang *et al.*, 2025)

NRF2/HO-1 ANTIOXIDANT PATHWAY ACTIVATION

INHIBITION OF INFLAMMASOME ACTIVATION

The NLRP3 inflammasome is a multiprotein complex that plays a critical role in innate immunity and inflammation through the activation of caspase-1 and the maturation of IL-1β and IL-18. Dysregulation of this pathway contributes to chronic inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis and inflammatory bowel disease.

Phytochemicals like berberine (from *Berberis vulgaris*) and curcumin have been shown to inhibit NLRP3 inflammasome activation, thereby reducing the release of mature IL-1β and limiting inflammatory damage (Li *et al.*, 2024).

NLRP3 Inflammasome Inhibition

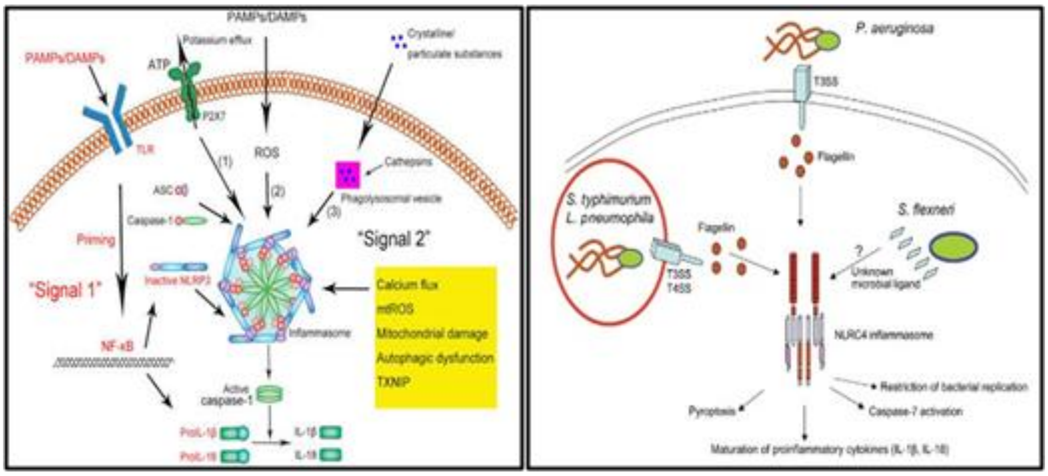


Figure 5: Suppression of NLRP3 inflammasome activation. Certain phytochemicals such as berberine and curcumin inhibit the assembly of NLRP3 inflammasome components, preventing caspase-1 activation and the maturation of IL-1β and IL-18. (Li *et al.*, 2024)

MODULATION OF MAPK PATHWAY

MAPK Pathway

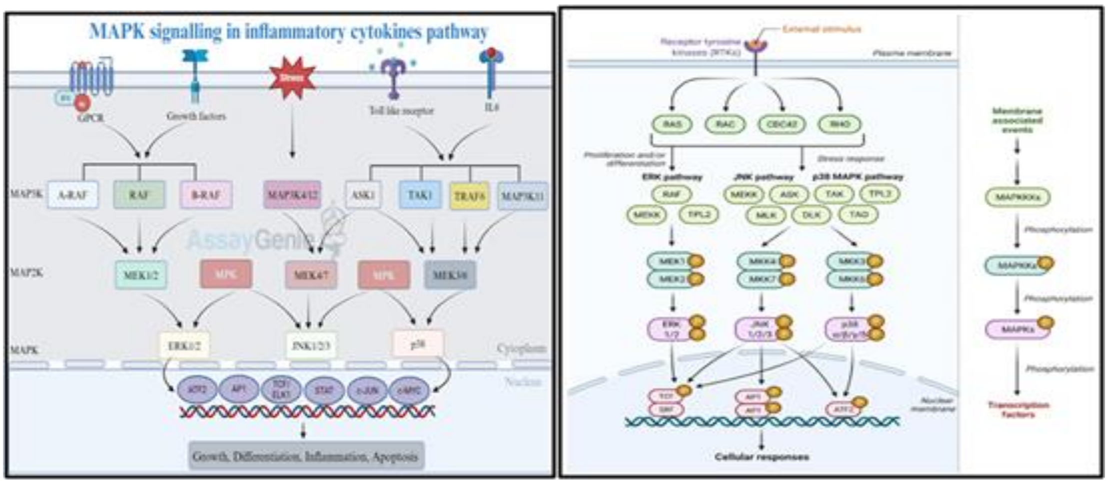


Figure 6: Inhibition of MAPK signaling by flavonoids. Compounds like apigenin and luteolin downregulate phosphorylation of ERK, JNK, and p38, reducing the transcription of pro-inflammatory genes. (Wang *et al.*, 2024)

The mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, which includes ERK, JNK, and p38 kinases, is involved in transmitting inflammatory signals from the cell surface to the nucleus. Phytochemicals such as apigenin, luteolin, and genistein modulate MAPK signaling by inhibiting the phosphorylation of p38 MAPK and JNK, resulting in decreased expression of inflammatory genes (Wang *et al.,* 2024).

DOWNREGULATION OF ADHESION MOLECULES

During inflammation, leukocyte adhesion and migration into tissues are facilitated by adhesion molecules such as ICAM-1 and VCAM-1 expressed on endothelial cells. Certain phytochemicals, like rosmarinic acid and ellagic acid, reduce the expression of these adhesion molecules, thereby inhibiting leukocyte infiltration and tissue damage (Choudhury *et al.,* 2025).

EPIGENETIC MODULATION

Emerging evidence suggests that some phytochemicals can modulate inflammation through epigenetic mechanisms, including DNA methylation, histone modification, and microRNA regulation. Sulforaphane from cruciferous vegetables activates histone deacetylase inhibitors, resulting in the suppression of pro-inflammatory gene expression.

MECHANISMS OF ANTIBACTERIAL ACTION

Plant metabolites act against bacteria via multiple, often complementary mechanisms:

Membrane disruption and increased permeability — many terpenoids and phenolics insert into lipid bilayers causing leakage of ions and metabolites, which rapidly reduces bacterial viability.

Inhibition of macromolecular synthesis — alkaloids and certain flavonoids can interfere with DNA gyrase, topoisomerases, RNA polymerase, or ribosomal function, slowing replication and protein synthesis.

Anti-biofilm and quorum sensing interference — phytochemicals can prevent biofilm formation or disrupt established biofilms by affecting quorum sensing signals, matrix synthesis, or extracellular polymeric substance stability. Recent reviews highlight an expanding body of work showing antibiofilm activity for multiple phytochemical classes, a critical property given biofilms' role in persistent infections.

Synergy with antibiotics — numerous studies (2024–2025) document that phytochemicals can potentiate conventional antibiotics, lowering effective doses by inhibiting efflux pumps, disrupting membranes to enhance drug entry, or blocking resistance-conferring enzymes. This antibiotic-adjunct role is an active area of translational research.

REPRESENTATIVE PHYTOCHEMICALS AND RECENT EVIDENCE

Kaempferide / kaempferol derivatives — identified as anti-inflammatory agents with antibacterial potential in targeted phytochemical investigations, including mechanistic studies demonstrating NF-κB inhibition and bacterial growth suppression.

Curcuminoids (curcumin and analogues) — continue to show anti-inflammatory effects in various models and exhibit synergistic antibacterial effects when combined with antibiotics or when delivered in nanoformulations to improve bioavailabili; several studies detail both in vitro antibacterial activity and anti-inflammatory outcomes.

Essential oil components (thymol, carvacrol, eugenol) — multiple reviews reiterate their potent membrane-active antibacterial activity and their capacity to lower inflammatory mediator release in topical and systemic models; formulation strategies to control irritation were emphasized.

Moringa oleifera extracts — an experimental study profiled Moringa extracts and reported robust antibacterial and antioxidant/anti-inflammatory markers, linking high phenolic and flavonoid content to activity. Such plant-level profiling illustrates how traditional medicinal plants remain a valuable source of dual-action phytochemicals.

TRANSLATIONAL AND FORMULATION CONSIDERATIONS

Despite promising bioactivities, several translational hurdles remain:

Bioavailability and stability — many phytochemicals have low oral bioavailability, are rapidly metabolized, or are volatile (essential oils). Innovations in nanoencapsulation, lipid carriers, and polymeric delivery systems (including plant-based nanoparticles) have received increasing attention in literature as a means to improve pharmacokinetics and target delivery while reducing toxicity.

Standardization and reproducibility — variability in plant chemo type, extraction method, and assay conditions complicates cross-study comparisons. The recent reviews highlight the need for standardized extraction protocols, chemical profiling (HPLC/MS), and validated bioassays to build a reliable evidence base.

Safety and off-target effects — although many phytochemicals are considered safe at traditional doses, concentrated extracts or novel formulations can produce cytotoxicity, allergenicity, or off-target interactions, particularly when combined with conventional drugs. Contemporary papers urge careful toxicological evaluation in preclinical models.

Regulatory and clinical development pathway — moving phytochemicals from bench to bedside requires clear regulatory strategies: botanical drug pathways, well-controlled clinical trials, and demonstration of consistent manufacturing quality. Several 2024–2025 perspectives emphasize collaborative models that integrate phytochemistry, pharmacology, and formulation science.

OPPORTUNITIES AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Key avenues for future work identified in recent literature include:

Rational combination therapies — pairing phytochemicals with existing antibiotics to restore susceptibility in resistant strains, with mechanistic studies to define synergy and avoid antagonism.

Antibiofilm drug discovery — targeting the unique physiology of biofilms with molecules that disrupt both bacterial viability and matrix integrity; phytochemicals are privileged starting points for such screens.

Structure-activity relationship (SAR) and medicinal chemistry — optimizing natural scaffolds (e.g., chalcones, flavonoid cores) to improve potency, selectivity, and pharmacokinetics while minimizing toxicity. Contemporary reviews encourage coupling high-throughput screening with insilico docking and ADMET profiling.

Advanced delivery platforms — nanoparticle and hydrogel formulations for local delivery (wound care, topical infections, periodontal disease) that exploit combined antibacterial and anti-inflammatory actions for faster healing. 2024–2025 studies highlight promising preclinical results.

CONCLUSION

Phytochemicals exert anti-inflammatory activity through multiple interconnected mechanisms targeting enzymes, transcription factors, signaling cascades, and oxidative stress pathways. Their multi-targeted mode of action makes them promising candidates for managing both acute and chronic inflammatory conditions with fewer side effects compared to synthetic drugs. Understanding these mechanisms at the molecular level can aid in the rational design of phytochemical-based therapeutics for inflammatory diseases. Progress in standardization, mechanistic elucidation, and delivery technologies will be crucial to translate these compounds into clinically useful agents. Continued rigorous preclinical and clinical evaluation, together with strategic combination approaches, offers a realistic pathway for phytochemical-based solutions to both antimicrobial resistance and inflammatory disease.

REFERENCES

[1]. Choudhury, P., Sharma, D., & Das, A. (2025). Modulation of adhesion molecules by plant-derived polyphenols in chronic inflammation. *Phytotherapy Research, 39*(4), 1123–1132. https://doi.org/10.1002/ptr.8021

[2]. Kumar, R., Sahu, S., & Banerjee, S. (2024). Phytochemical modulation of cytokine signaling in inflammatory pathways. *Journal of Inflammation Research, 17*(2), 220–233.

[3]. Li, J., Zhang, Y., & Wang, L. (2024). Berberine suppresses NLRP3 inflammasome activation in macrophages. *Inflammation and Immunity, 31*(1), 55–68.

[4]. Patel, K., & Zhao, J. (2025). Targeting NF-κB signaling with bioactive phytochemicals: Implications in inflammation and cancer. *Frontiers in Pharmacology, 16*, 12023.

[5]. Singh, M., Roy, A., & Tiwari, P. (2024). COX and LOX inhibition by phytochemicals: A mechanistic insight. *Phytomedicine, 126*, 155157.

[6]. Wang, J., Zhang, X., & Li, H. (2024). MAPK pathway modulation by flavonoids in inflammatory diseases. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 25*(6), 3621.

[7]. Zhang, L., Chen, Y., & Qiu, W. (2025). Activation of Nrf2/HO-1 signaling by baicalin attenuates oxidative stress-induced inflammation. *Antioxidants, 14*(2), 189.

[8]. Angelini, P. (2024). *Plant-Derived Antimicrobials and Their Crucial Role in Combating Antibiotic Resistance.* Antibiotics, 13(8), 746.

[9]. Pantalos, G. (2024). *Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory phytochemicals for the management of inflammatory diseases.* Applied Sciences, 14(5), 2177.

[10]. El-Sherbiny, G. M. (2024). *Antibacterial, antioxidant, cytotoxicity, and phytochemical profiling of Moringa oleifera leaf extract.* Scientific Reports, 14, Article 80700. Nature

[11]. SeyedAlinaghi, S. A. (2025). *A systematic review on natural products with antimicrobial activity.* Journal (PMC), 2025.

[12]. Zhou, K. (2025). *Natural phytochemical-based strategies for antibiofilm therapy.* Journal (PMC), 2025.

[13]. Ashraf, G. J. (2025). *Phytochemical profiling and evaluation of antimicrobial properties: plant-based nanoparticles and applications.* Journal, 2025. ScienceDirect

[14]. Camilleri, E. (2024). *A comprehensive review of the phytochemicals, health benefits, and mechanisms of action.* Food Chemistry (or related journal), 2024. ScienceDirect

[15]. Malcangi, G. (2025). *Effectiveness of herbal medicines with anti-inflammatory properties: systematic review.* Journal, 2025.

Chapter 16

IMPACT OF LACK OF SOCIAL AWARENESS ON WATER CONSERVATION

SHARMILA JAIN

Department of Chemistry,
Vijaya Raje Government Girls Post Graduate College, Morar, Gwalior (M.P.)
Corresponding author E-mail: jainsharmila23@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Water is the basis of life. Without water, our life is worthless. Many activities of daily life are not possible without water. But water is getting scarce. It is anticipated that lack of clean potable water will become a serious problem in many regions of the world in the near future. Although water is abundant on Earth, the amount of fresh, drinkable water that is essential for life is only 2.7% of the total amount of water found on Earth. Most of the fresh water is found in the form of snow, glaciers (icebergs) and clouds on the mountain peaks and the remaining little part has been collected in rivers, ponds, lakes, springs and underground sources for centuries. We all know that the saline water found in the seas is not fit for drinking or any other use and about 85% of the rainwater falls directly into the sea and never reaches the land. The remaining part of the rain water that falls on the land fills the lakes and wells and keeps on increasing the flow of the rivers. For this reason, water is considered a rare and precious resource. Water is a resource that cannot be produced or stored through any technological process, whenever it wants. Water conservation is a very essential need but the public awareness is very low. All people are equally facing water crisis but due to lack of social consciousness, clean potable water is being wasted by using it for useless purposes. Water conservation means using water efficiently and reducing wastage to ensure long-term benefits of clean water. This includes protecting water from unnecessary waste and damage, which helps to preserve the limited natural resources. Changes in habits and technologies at domestic, agricultural and industrial levels are essential for water conservation. Through water conservation, we not only protect water resources but also provide protected and safe homes to all types of aquatic flora and fauna.

KEYWORDS: Water Resources, Clean Drinking Water, Water Conservation, Lack of Social Consciousness, Awareness of People.

INTRODUCTION

In ancient times, water was seen and understood as a precious asset. In fact, every ancient culture considered water as a sacred resource. But the rise of the Industrial Revolution in the twentieth century and the consequent advent of Western materialism have made the view of natural resources unconventional. People all over the world see water as a cheap resource that becomes easily available in unlimited quantities and do not care about its wastage. Just as the twentieth century revolved around petroleum oil, the twenty-first century will focus on issues of clean drinking water. The most important step towards finding solutions to the issues related to water and environmental conservation will be to bring about a change in the attitude and habits of the people. If people all over the world see water as a cheap resource that can be wasted as much as possible, then even the best policies and technologies in the world cannot reduce water scarcity.

NEED FOR WATER CONSERVATION IN OUR COUNTRY

The situation of potable water in India is very bad though India is one of the wettest countries of the world but the availability of water here is not favorable. Our country receives an average annual rainfall of 1150 mm, which is the highest for any country of similar size in the world. But the distribution of this large amount of rainfall is uneven for example; while some areas in the North-East receive up to thirteen meters of annual rainfall, some areas in Rajasthan do not receive more than 20 cm of rainfall. Due to this uneven distribution of rainfall, many parts of the country face severe water scarcity. The per capita consumption of water in India varies depending on the mode of usage. In an Indian city, a normal middle class household or a lower middle class household has a standard consumption of 135 liters of water per person per day. Out of this, 45 liters of water per person per day is used for sanitary purposes and the rest for other household purposes. It is estimated that by 2050, half of India's population will live in urban areas and face an acute shortage of drinking water.
With the increase in population, increasing domestic and industrial requirements and supply of water for irrigation purposes in agriculture, the available quantity of water is also decreasing and this situation may become more serious in future as we need more food items for our growing population. To increase food production, we need more water for irrigation. With the expansion of irrigation in the country and increasing urbanization and industrialization, our water resources have been exploited to a great extent. This has led to water scarcity in many parts of the country. It is, therefore, necessary to conserve water and prevent its misuse. Hence, water conservation is a must.

WATER SCARCITY IS INCREASING DUE TO THE FOLLOWING REASONS

- Drought due to lack of rainfall
- Increasing demand for irrigation
- Increasing industrial demand
- Population growth
- Uneven distribution of water resources, erratic rainfall due to climate change, and inefficient water management
- Pollution and indiscriminate exploitation of water resources, and

- Wastage of water and our irresponsible attitude.

NEED FOR SOCIAL AWARENESS FOR WATER CONSERVATION

The need for social consciousness towards water conservation is as much as CPR to a person affected by a heart attack. That is, timely treatment so that the dying or disappearing water sources of our country can be revived. People of all sections of the society, educated or uneducated, do think of saving water from being wasted when there is a water crisis. Otherwise leaving the tap open or washing the vehicles with excessive water and cleaning the houses as well as the road in front of the house, we also clean it with potable water. We have been misusing potable water for years in sanitary works. Even today, almost all the houses in our cities are supplied with potable water by the Municipal Corporation and this water is used for other purposes than drinking and cooking. Very few people know that potable water is being used not only in households but also in many urban commercial and public institutions like hospitals, hotels, hostels, stadiums, club houses, cinema halls, and educational institutions like schools, colleges and universities. All these are consuming 340-500 liters per day. It has been observed that public and commercial institutions having sufficient open roof area in their buildings can meet 40-50% of their requirement through roof water harvesting system but very little research has been done on rooftop rainwater harvesting capacity in many institutions. Public institutions have low awareness, even though they have large roof area and financial support, which is a barrier to implementing effective rainwater harvesting systems.

OUR EFFORTS FOR A SAFER FUTURE

With the help of various measures and methods of water conservation, the problem of clean drinking water can be solved. Water conservation is one of the foremost priorities of the world today. We should conserve water in industries, in homes, in public places outside homes, in gardens, in farms, everywhere.

Domestic water conservation - Because of the use of drinking water in many cleaning works besides drinking and cooking in the houses, the possibility of its wastage is more, so by taking care of small things in the houses, its wastage can be reduced and the domestic demand can be reduced. All the cleaning work in which more water is wasted is as follows - in toilets, cleaning houses and cars, washing clothes, cleaning utensils in the kitchen, etc.

HOME WATER CONSERVATION MEASURES

i. While washing hands , feet, while making beard, while brushing and while washing utensils in the sink one should not keep the tap open continuously but one should do all these things by taking the right amount of water kept in the bucket in the mug.
ii. Use buckets and mugs instead of pipes while washing the vehicle.
iii. Buckets and mugs should be used instead of fountains while bathing.
iv. Instead of washing a small amount of clothes daily in the washing machine, clothes should be washed only when they are collected.

v. Instead of high flow flush tanks in toilets, low flow flush tanks should be installed. Toilets in all homes and public places should be equipped with a two-button flush tank with a small amount of water after urination and more water after defecation.

vi. Water spilling from rooftop tanks is a common sight in homes, educational institutions, and offices. To prevent this, it should be mandatory to install water overflow alarms everywhere.

vii. Wherever there is leakage of water from the tap or pipe, it should be rectified immediately.

WATER CONSERVATION IN PUBLIC PLACES OUTSIDE THE HOUSE

i. The use of drinking water for cleaning purposes should be completely banned in many commercial places in cities, such as car washing centers, laundries, hotels, wedding ceremony venues, etc.

ii. The wastage of thousands of liters of water can be prevented by immediately informing the water supply office or the concerned person wherever the taps are damaged or the water is leaking from the pipes in public parks, streets, Societies, hospitals, educational institutions, offices, etc.

iii. Drip irrigation technique in gardens and plants around the house; watering with drip irrigation can save a lot of water. If the gardens are watered at night instead of day, irrigation is done with less water due to less evaporation of water. Modern techniques of low cost irrigation should be adopted for agriculture.

All of the above measures can prevent a lot of water from being wasted.

RAIN WATER HARVESTING

Modern techniques of rain water harvesting. The two main techniques of rainwater harvesting are as follows:

1. The collection of rain water for future use on the surface of the land. Storing rainwater on the surface of the land itself is an old traditional technique. For this, water bodies like tanks, ponds, check-dams, barrows were constructed in which rain water is collected directly.
2. Recharge of ground water- In this technique rain water is collected by taking it deep inside the ground by which the underground water gets recharged. This is a new method of rainwater harvesting through which the ground water level is being increased. For this purpose, the following structures are used:
   i. **Soakage pit -** A soakage pit or recharge pit is created to recharge a shallow aquifer.
   ii. **Underground aquifers**- These are porous layers of soil made up of sand, stone and gravel or cracked rocks from which abundant water can be collected and extracted for use. To construct these, pits of one to two meters width and 1 - 1.5 meters depth are made which are filled with sand, soil, pebbles. Rain water easily gets collected inside the ground through cracks and holes of sand, soil and pebbles.

iii. **By making trenches**- When permeable rocks are available at shallow depth than 0.5 to 1 meter wide, 1 to 1.5 meter deep and 10 to 20 meter long trenches are made there. Its width, length and depth depend on the availability of water. For this, layers of small and large pebbles, sand and clay are laid. Rain water easily gets collected inside the ground by leaking through the cracks and holes of sand, soil and pebbles.

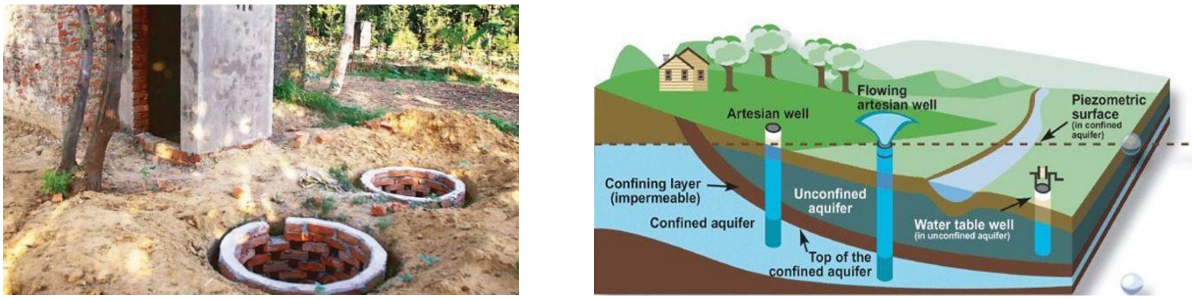


Figure 1: (a) Soakage pit **(b) Underground aquifers**

iv. **Dug wells-** Existing dried up wells can be easily used as recharge structures. For this it is necessary to clean the well properly and before putting the water in the well it should be passed through filter media.

v. **Recharge shaft-** Recharge shafts are constructed for recharging shallow water bodies. They are made below the wet surface of the soil. These recharge shafts have a diameter of about 0.5 to 3 meters and a depth of 10 to 25 meters. These shafts are filled with stones and coarse sand through which water seeps through cracks and holes and easily gets stored inside the ground.

vi. **By making lateral shafts of bore wells** - For the purpose of recharge of shallow and deep aquifers and depending upon the availability of rain water, lateral shafts of 1.5 to 2 m wide and 10 to 30 m long are constructed with one or two bore wells. Layers of stone and thick sand are laid inside the lateral shaft.

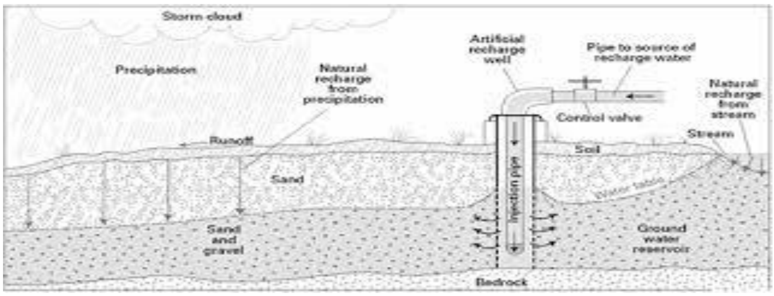


Figure 2: Recharge shaft

Rooftop rain water harvesting - The collection of rainwater falling on the roof of buildings is called rooftop rainwater harvesting. Tamil Nadu is the first state in India to make rooftop rainwater harvesting mandatory for all buildings to tackle groundwater depletion. Due to this initiative, the groundwater level in Chennai increased by 50% within five years. Government campaigns like Jal Shakti Abhiyan (2019) have helped promote water conservation and rainwater harvesting across the country. Public institutions need to implement and promote rainwater harvesting systems more proactively as well as it is important to follow guidelines and techniques for system maintenance. Spreading awareness and sharing technical knowledge, especially for design and maintenance, is essential for this.

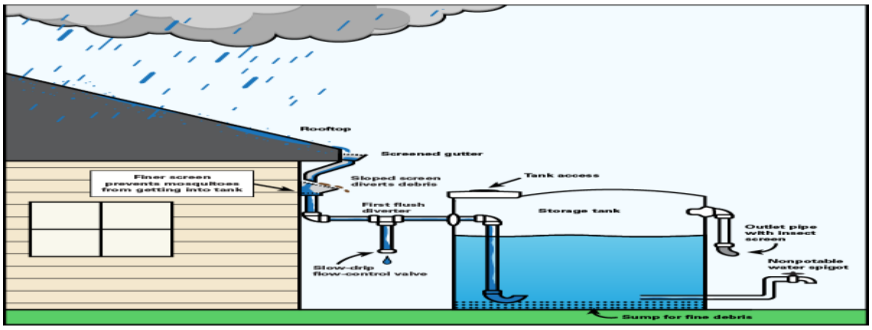


Figure 3: Rain water harvesting

CONCLUSION

This analysis concludes that water conservation is not only the responsibility of the administration but it is the moral and social responsibility of every citizen. This is the true worship of mankind towards nature. The education of water conservation should be given to all in such a way that it should be established in our minds that it is a virtuous work and by this work we will secure the future of the coming generations.

REFERENCES

[1]. Central Ground Water Authority (1986) (constituted under sub-section (3) of section 3 of the Environment (Protection) Act, 1986)

[2]. https://www.startupindia.gov.in/hindi/content/sih/en/Water-challenges-detail.html

[3]. https://www.waterdiplomat.org/story/2023/02/water-security-issues-and-challenges-india

[4]. https://www.twadboard.tn.gov.in/roof-top-rain-water-harvesting-rrwh

[5]. Gajiri, P.R., H.N. Verma and S.S. Prihar (1982). Rain Water Harvesting and Its Recycling For Maximization Of Crop Production. Indian Journal of Soil Conservation 9(2-3) : 69-75

Chapter
17

POLLINATION IN PUMPKIN (CUCURBITA SPP.)

BENDANGSENLA LONGKUMER

Department of Entomology,
School of Agricultural Sciences, Nagaland University

ABSTRACT

Pumpkin is highly dependent on insect-mediated pollination due to its separate male and female flowers and short period of stigma receptivity. Bees are the most efficient pollinators, supporting pollen transfer and ensuring proper fruit growth. Pollination efficiency is influenced by environmental and management factors and poor pollination leads to reduced fruit set and quality. Adoption of pollinator-friendly practices, managed bee colonies, and hand pollination can significantly improve yield and sustainability in pumpkin cultivation.

KEYWORDS: Pumpkin, Pollination Biology, Insect Pollinators, Bees, Fruit Set, Floral Biology, Pollination Efficiency, Hand Pollination, Sustainable Production, Pollinator Management.

INTRODUCTION

Pumpkin is a widely cultivated vegetable valued for its nutritional richness, versatility, and adaptability across diverse climatic zones. Being monoecious with unisexual flowers, pumpkins require pollen from male flowers to be transferred to female flowers for fruit formation. Because pumpkin pollen is heavy and sticky, it cannot be dispersed by wind and relies mainly on insects. Therefore, understanding pollination biology is essential for improving fruit set and yield. Pollination plays a decisive role in fruit set, seed development, and yield formation in pumpkin (Cucurbita spp.). Since pumpkins bear separate male and female flowers, they depend almost entirely on insect pollinators—especially bees—for successful pollen transfer. This chapter provides an updated and original overview of pumpkin floral biology, pollination processes, pollinator species, limiting factors, and scientific strategies to enhance pollination efficiency for sustainable production.

FLORAL BIOLOGY OF PUMPKIN

FLOWER TYPES AND CHARACTERISTICS

Pumpkin plants produce two types of flowers:

Male (staminate) flowers: Contain stamens and produce abundant pollen.

Female (pistillate) flowers: Contain the ovary, which develops into the fruit after fertilization.

A swollen ovary at the base distinguishes female flowers from male ones.

FLOWERING TIME AND LONGEVITY

Pumpkin flowers open early in the morning—mostly between 5:00–7:00 AM—and remain open for only a few hours. This short blooming period makes timely pollination critical. Stigmas are receptive mainly during the morning.

POLLEN AND STIGMA BIOLOGY

Pollen grains are large and sticky, restricting wind pollination. Stigma receptivity is highest during early morning and declines by noon, emphasizing the importance of active pollinators during this period.

POLLINATION MECHANISM IN PUMPKIN

POLLINATION REQUIREMENTS

A pumpkin flower requires a considerable quantity of viable pollen grains—typically over a thousand—for normal fruit set. Multiple insect visits are usually needed to deposit sufficient pollen.

ROLE OF BEES

Bees are the primary pollinators in pumpkin fields. Important species include:

- **Apis mellifera**
- **Apis cerana indica**
- **Carpenter bees (Xylocopa spp.)**
- **Squash bees (Peponapis, Xenoglossa spp.)**, highly efficient but less common in parts of Asia

Bees are drawn to pumpkin flowers due to their bright yellow color and abundant pollen.

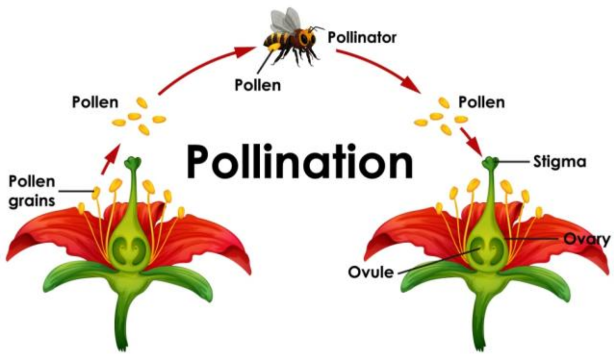


Figure 1: Process of pollination

https://www.google.com/imgres?q=pollination%20in%20pu&imgurl=https%3A%2F%2Fstatic.wixstatic.com

FACTORS INFLUENCING POLLINATION

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- Moderate temperatures (20–30°C) encourage pollinator activity.
- Excessive humidity or rainfall hampers pollen viability and reduces bee visits.
- Cloudy mornings, strong winds, or low light also decrease pollination success.

BIOLOGICAL AND MANAGEMENT FACTORS

- Reduction in pollinator populations

- Flower pests and diseases
- Poor male-to-female flower ratio
- Competing blooming plants nearby
- Heavy pesticide use during morning hours

COMMON POLLINATION ISSUES IN PUMPKIN

Reduced pollination results in:

- Poor fruit set
- Small or deformed fruits
- Early fruit drop

Major causes include low bee activity, short stigma receptivity, and unfavorable weather during flower opening.

IMPROVING POLLINATION EFFICIENCY

CONSERVATION OF NATURAL POLLINATORS

- Avoid spraying insecticides during peak pollinator activity.
- Use bee-friendly pesticides only in late evening.
- Maintain flowering borders or refuges to support native pollinators.

INTRODUCTION OF BEE COLONIES

Managed honey bee colonies can significantly increase fruit set. Introducing **1–3 colonies per hectare** is beneficial in larger fields.

HAND POLLINATION

In areas where pollinator populations are low, manual pollination is effective. Steps:

- Select freshly opened male and female flowers early in the morning.
- Remove the male petals carefully.
- Transfer pollen by gently touching anther to the stigma.
- Mark the pollinated flower for observation.

CULTURAL PRACTICES

- Adequate irrigation and nutrient management
- Improving soil fertility to synchronize flowering
- Use of growth regulators if required (based on research recommendations)

POLLINATION UNDER PROTECTED CULTIVATION

Enclosed environments such as greenhouses may restrict pollinator movement. Options include:

- Introducing bee hives inside structures
- Regular hand pollination
- Ensuring ventilation openings for natural pollinator entry

BENEFITS OF EFFICIENT POLLINATION

Effective pollination leads to:

- Higher fruit set percentage
- Better fruit size and uniformity
- Improved seed development
- Yield increases of up to 20–40% in some cases

Poor pollination directly reduces both quality and productivity.

FUTURE RESEARCH NEEDS

- Conservation of native pollinator species
- Pollinator-friendly integrated pest management
- Varietal improvement with better floral traits
- Ecological farming approaches to sustain pollination services

CONCLUSION

Pumpkin production relies heavily on insect-mediated pollination because of its floral biology. Ensuring pollinator presence, improving field conditions, and adopting pollinator-friendly practices can greatly enhance yield and fruit quality. Sustainable pollination management should be integrated into pumpkin cultivation for long-term productivity.

REFERENCES

[1]. Artz, D.R. and Nault, B.A., (2011). Performance of Apis mellifera, Bombus impatiens, and Peponapis pruinosa (Hymenoptera: Apidae) as pollinators of pumpkin. *Journal of Economic Entomology*, 104(4), pp.1153-1161.

[2]. Walters, S.A. and Taylor, B.H., (2006). Effects of honey bee pollination on pumpkin fruit and seed yield. *HortScience*, 41(2), pp.370-373.

[3]. Sinu, P.A., Pooja, A.R. and Aneha, K., (2019). Overhead sprinkler irrigation affects pollinators and pollination in pumpkin (Cucurbita maxima). *Scientia Horticulturae*, *258*, p.108803.

[4]. Surcică, A., (2010). Pumpkin Pollinators. *Penn State Cooperative Extension. USA*.

Chapter
18

SUSTAINABLE RICE-BASED CROPPING SYSTEMS FOR ENHANCING PRODUCTIVITY AND SOIL HEALTH

TH. NENGPARMOI

Department of Agronomuy, Nagaland University, Nagaland
Corresponding author E-mail: gaurav.dubey79@gmail.com

ABSTRACT

Sustainable rice-based cropping systems aim to improve productivity while maintaining soil health and environmental quality. Crop diversification with pulses, oilseeds, vegetables, and integrated rice–fish systems enhance nutrient cycling, income, and resilience. Water-saving techniques like SRI, AWD, and direct seeding reduce input costs and greenhouse gas emissions. Conservation tillage, green manuring, and integrated nutrient management restore soil fertility. These practices collectively support food security, climate adaptation, and long-term sustainability in rice-growing regions.

KEYWORDS: Sustainable Agriculture; Rice-Based Cropping Systems; Crop Diversification; Soil Health; Conservation Agriculture; Water-Saving Techniques; Integrated Nutrient Management; Productivity; Climate Resilience; Food Security.

INTRODUCTION

Rice is the most widely consumed staple food in Asia and plays a crucial role in global food and nutritional security. In India, rice-based farming systems dominate irrigated and rainfed lowland areas, ensuring livelihood for millions of small and marginal farmers. However, continuous rice mono-cropping has led to stagnating yields, soil fertility decline, groundwater depletion, pest buildup, and greenhouse gas emissions. Therefore, sustainable diversification and improved management of rice-based cropping systems are essential to enhance productivity, profitability, and ecological resilience.

Sustainable rice-based cropping systems integrate crop rotation, intercropping, improved nutrient management, conservation tillage, and water-saving practices to maintain long-term soil health and environmental quality while meeting increasing food demand.

CONCEPT OF SUSTAINABLE RICE-BASED CROPPING SYSTEMS

A sustainable rice-based system aims to:

- Maximize resource use efficiency (soil, water, nutrients, energy)
- Enhance soil organic carbon and soil biological activity
- Reduce environmental footprints such as methane emission
- Improve system productivity and income stability

- Promote biodiversity and climate resilience

It emphasizes the shift from input-intensive agriculture to knowledge-intensive ecological farming.

LIMITATIONS OF CONVENTIONAL RICE MONO-CROPPING

Soil Nutrient Depletion: Continuous puddling reduces soil structure and micronutrient availability.

Water Scarcity: Irrigated rice consumes 2,000–5,000 L water per kg grain.

Low Input Efficiency: Only ~30–40% nitrogen fertilizer is effectively utilized by the crop.

Pest and Weed Pressure: Emergence of resistant weeds, diseases, and insect pests.

Environmental Concerns: High methane emissions from flooded soils.

These issues justify diversification and environmentally responsible production technologies.

DIVERSIFICATION STRATEGIES IN RICE-BASED SYSTEMS

RICE–WHEAT CROPPING SYSTEM

- Common in Indo-Gangetic Plains
- Enhances annual productivity but facing decline due to residue burning and soil compaction
- Conservation agriculture (zero tillage, residue retention) improves soil structure and carbon sequestration

RICE–PULSE SYSTEMS (E.G., RICE–LENTIL / RICE–CHICKPEA / RICE–MUNGBEAN)

- Pulses fix atmospheric nitrogen and improve soil fertility
- Provide high-quality protein to diet
- Break rice pest cycles
- Suitable for rainfed and upland ecosystems

RICE–OILSEED SYSTEMS (E.G., RICE–MUSTARD / RICE–GROUNDNUT)

- Efficient use of residual moisture after rice
- Enhances profitability with higher market returns

RICE–VEGETABLE SYSTEMS

- Include crops like cauliflower, potato, tomato, and okra
- High income generation and employment opportunities
- Careful nutrient and pest management required

RICE–FISH SYSTEMS

- Efficient recycling of nutrients
- Improves protein supply and farm income
- Conserves on-farm biodiversity

SOIL HEALTH IMPROVEMENT APPROACHES

CONSERVATION TILLAGE

- Zero / minimum tillage reduces erosion and preserves soil aggregates
- Retains crop residues to improve soil organic carbon

GREEN MANURING AND COVER CROPS

- Crops like Sesbania and sunhemp add biomass and nitrogen
- Reduce weeds and improve soil microbial activity

INTEGRATED NUTRIENT MANAGEMENT (INM)

- Balanced use of organic manures, compost, biofertilizers, and chemical fertilizers
- Improves nutrient efficiency and long-term soil fertility

CROP RESIDUE MANAGEMENT

- Avoids residue burning
- Enhances water retention, nutrient cycling, and soil fauna

SOIL BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION

Practices that promote earthworms, nitrogen fixers, and decomposers enhance soil quality

WATER-SAVING TECHNOLOGIES IN RICE SYSTEMS

SYSTEM OF RICE INTENSIFICATION (SRI)

- Younger seedlings, wider spacing, intermittent irrigation
- Improves yield with less seed, water, and fertilizer

ALTERNATE WETTING AND DRYING (AWD)

- Controlled water application reduces water input by 20–40%
- Lowers methane emission by allowing oxygen entry in soil

DIRECT SEEDED RICE (DSR)

- Eliminates puddling and transplanting
- Saves labor and water, reduces carbon footprint

PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

Sustainable crop protection emphasizes:

- Crop rotation to break pest cycles
- Rice varieties with multi-pest resistance
- Biological control agents
- Integrated Weed Management (IWM) practices
- Habitat diversification for beneficial insects

These strategies reduce dependence on synthetic pesticides and preserve ecological balance.

PRODUCTIVITY AND ECONOMIC BENEFITS

- Diversified systems often produce higher system productivity (rice equivalent yield)
- Cost of cultivation is reduced under conservation agriculture and water-saving methods
- Income stability increases due to multiple crop options
- Reduced external input dependency improves farm resilience

Well-designed diversification can enhance productivity by 20–40% depending on region and management.

CLIMATE CHANGE AND SUSTAINABILITY

Sustainable rice-based systems contribute to climate resilience by:

- Increasing soil carbon sequestration
- Reducing greenhouse gas emissions (methane and nitrous oxide)
- Managing drought and flood risks through diversified cropping choices
- Enhancing ecosystem services such as pollination and nutrient cycling

FUTURE PROSPECTS AND POLICY SUPPORT

To promote sustainable rice-based systems, the following are essential:

- Strong extension support for knowledge dissemination
- Incentives for crop diversification and residue management
- Investment in irrigation modernization and micro-irrigation
- Research on climate-smart varieties and microbial bio-inoculants
- Strengthening of markets and value chains for pulses, oilseeds, and vegetables

CONCLUSION

Sustainable rice-based cropping systems are vital to overcome the limitations of conventional rice monoculture. By integrating diversification, conservation agriculture, efficient nutrient and water management, farmers can improve productivity, soil health, profitability, and environmental quality. Future agricultural growth will rely more on ecological intensification than on increased chemical input usage. Sustainable rice-based systems ensure food security while nurturing natural resources for future generations.

REFERENCES

[1]. Upadhaya, B., Kishor, K., Kumar, V., Kumar, N., Kumar, S., Yadav, V.K., Kumar, R., Gaber, A., Laing, A.M., Brestic, M. and Hossain, A., (2022). Diversification of rice-based cropping system for improving system productivity and soil health in eastern gangetic plains of India. *Agronomy*, *12*(10), p.2393.

[2]. Ali, R.I., Awan, T.H., Ahmad, M., Saleem, M.U. and Akhtar, M., (2012). Diversification of rice-based cropping systems to improve soil fertility, sustainable productivity and economics. *Journal of Animal and plant sciences*, *22*(1), pp.108-112.

[3]. Sravan, U.S. and Murthy, K.V.R., (2018). Enhancing productivity in rice-based cropping systems. In *Plant competition in cropping systems*. IntechOpen.

[4]. Deep, M., Kumar, R.M., Saha, S. and Singh, A., (2018). Rice-based cropping systems. *Indian Farming*, *68*(01), pp.27-30.

Chapter 19

IMPACT OF CLIMATE CHANGE ON POULTRY PRODUCTION

GAURAV DUBEY[1], ANKUR DWIVEDI[2], A AMET KEIKUNG[3], SAMAR THAKURIA[3], VELATO NYEKHA[3] V. K. VIDYARTHI[3] AND R ZUYIE[3]

[1]Government Agriculture College, Hardoi
[2]Mahatma Gandhi Chitrakoot Gramoday Vishwavidyalay, Chitrakoot
[3]School of Agricultural Sciences, Nagaland University, Nagaland University

ABSTRACT

Climate change has emerged as a major environmental challenge affecting global livestock systems, particularly poultry farming. Poultry birds are highly susceptible to temperature fluctuations due to their high metabolic heat production and absence of sweat glands. Rising ambient temperatures, irregular rainfall, increased humidity, and extreme climatic events disrupt physiological functions, reproductive performance, health, feed efficiency, and welfare. Furthermore, climate-induced stress reduces growth rate, egg production, carcass quality, and immunity while increasing disease prevalence and production costs. Feed shortages and water scarcity indirectly challenge poultry sustainability. Therefore, enhancing climate resilience through improved housing, nutritional interventions, genetic advancements, precision farming, and supportive policies is essential for safeguarding food security and farmer livelihoods. This chapter highlights the major climate-related impacts on poultry production and suggests mitigation and adaptive strategies for sustainable development of the poultry sector.

KEYWORDS: Climate Change, Heat Stress, Poultry Welfare, Feed Efficiency, Disease Incidence, Adaptation Strategies, Sustainable Poultry Production.

INTRODUCTION

The poultry industry plays a vital role in providing affordable, high-quality protein across the world. Demand for eggs and meat continues to rise due to population growth and urbanization. However, climate change poses serious risks to poultry productivity. Increased environmental heat load, altered precipitation patterns, and frequent heat waves create stressful conditions for birds. These changes not only compromise poultry health but also challenge economic stability and food security, especially in tropical regions.

CLIMATE CHANGE DRIVERS AFFECTING POULTRY

The major climate-related factors that influence poultry production include:

- Increased temperature and heat waves
- High humidity and altered rainfall distribution

- Extreme weather events such as floods and drought
- Shifts in pathogen distribution and ecological niches
- Reduced availability of feed resources due to crop failure

These drivers exert both direct and indirect impacts on poultry biology and production systems.

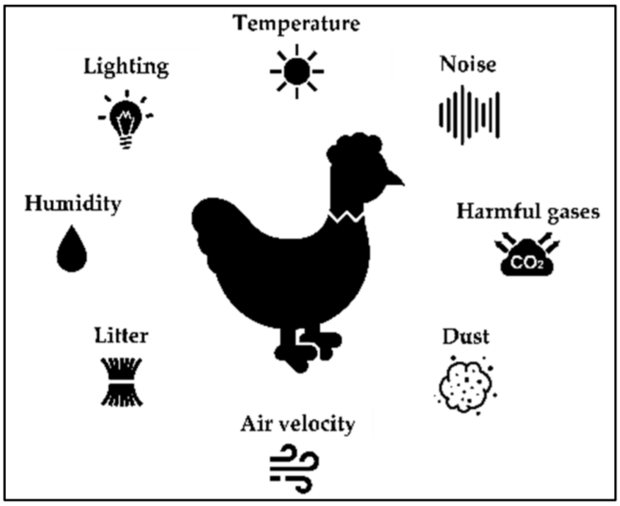


Figure 1: Source: https://www.mdpi.com/2076-2615/14/3/501

PHYSIOLOGICAL AND HEALTH IMPLICATIONS

HEAT STRESS RESPONSE

Poultry react to high temperatures by panting and reducing feed intake to minimize internal heat load. This leads to:

- Electrolyte imbalance and dehydration
- Poor thermoregulation and oxidative stress
- Higher mortality in broilers and high-producing layers

IMMUNO-SUPPRESSION AND DISEASE RISK

Climate variations promote:

- Emergence and spread of infectious diseases
- Longer survival of harmful pathogens in warm and moist environments
- Higher vulnerability to bacterial, viral, and parasitic infections

REPRODUCTIVE CHALLENGES

Heat alters the hormonal profile of breeders, resulting in:

- Lower fertility and hatchability
- Reduced semen quality in males
- Production of small and thin-shelled eggs

PRODUCTION AND PERFORMANCE LOSSES

Heat-stressed birds eat less, drink more, and convert nutrients poorly. As a result:

- Growth rate and body weight decrease in broilers
- Egg number, size, and shell strength decline in layers
- Feed Conversion Ratio (FCR) increases

- Carcass quality deteriorates with reduced muscle mass and more fat deposition

These consequences significantly reduce farm profitability.

FEED AND WATER CONSTRAINTS

Climate change influences global crop productivity, affecting the availability and price of major feed ingredients like maize and soybean. High temperature and humidity also increase:

- Myco-toxin formation in stored feed
- Spoilage of feed ingredients
- Water contamination

Nutritional strategies such as electrolytes, antioxidants, probiotics, and enzymes help birds withstand heat stress more effectively.

WELFARE AND BEHAVIORAL EFFECTS

Environmental stress disrupts normal behavior, leading to:

- Wing spreading, panting, reduced activity, and crowding near cooling sources
- Aggression and feather pecking due to discomfort
- Poor litter condition and increased ammonia levels affecting welfare standards

Welfare-oriented housing and stock management are crucial for maintaining bird comfort.

SOCIO-ECONOMIC CHALLENGES

Climate-related production decline increases:

- Cost of ventilation, cooling systems, and medication
- Market price fluctuations for poultry products
- Risk of financial losses for small and backyard farmers

Since poultry farming supports millions of rural households, climate stress can directly impact livelihood security.

ADAPTATION AND MITIGATION STRATEGIES

To maintain sustainable poultry production, the following measures are recommended:

Housing and Environmental Control

- Proper ventilation and evaporative cooling systems
- Thermal insulation and reflective roofing materials
- Reduced stocking density and shade management

Nutritional Interventions

- Supplementation with vitamins C & E, selenium, electrolytes
- Wet feeding during intense heat
- Use of heat-tolerant feed formulations

Breeding and Genetic Solutions

- Selection of heat-resistant indigenous breeds
- Genomic tools for resilience-based trait improvement

Health Management

- Strengthened vaccination and bio-security
- Continuous monitoring of emerging climate-linked diseases

Climate-Smart Technologies

- Precision farming using environmental sensors
- Automation of temperature and humidity control

POLICY AND EXTENSION SUPPORT

Government interventions are essential, including:

- Subsidies on cooling equipment and green housing systems
- Training programs on climate-smart poultry management
- Research funding for resilient germplasm and digital tools

Strengthening public–private partnerships can further enhance adoption of climate-adaptive practices.

CONCLUSION

Climate change threatens poultry production through negative impacts on bird physiology, productivity, welfare, nutrition, and disease dynamics. To secure future protein supplies and farmer incomes, the poultry sector must adopt integrated strategies focusing on strong housing design, nutritional optimization, better genetics, and advanced technology. A coordinated effort involving farmers, researchers, policymakers, and industry will ensure climate-resilient and sustainable poultry farming for the coming decades.

REFERENCES

[1]. Irivboje, O.A., Olufayo, O.O. and Irivboje, Y.I., (2021). Impact of climate change on poultry production: A review Impact du changement climatique sur la production avicole: un bilan. *Nigerian Journal of Animal Production*, *48*(4), pp.59-69.

[2]. Gerber, P., Opio, C. and Steinfeld, H., (2007). Poultry production and the environment–a review. In *Proceedings of the International Conference Poultry in the Twenty-First Century: Avian Influenza and Beyond.—2008.—P* (pp. 379-405).

[3]. Rodić, V., Perić, L., Đukić-Stojčić, M. and Vukelić, N., (2011). The environmental impact of poultry production. *Biotechnology in Animal Husbandry*, *27*(4), pp.1673-1679.

[4]. Seidavi, A.R., Zaker-Esteghamati, H. and Scanes, C.G., (2019). Present and potential impacts of waste from poultry production on the environment. *World's Poultry Science Journal*, *75*(1), pp.29-42.

Phytochemical Insights: Techniques and Applications Volume I

(ISBN: 978-93-48620-43-9)

About Editors

Dr. Mukul Machhindra Barwant is the Dean of Research and Innovation and an Assistant Professor in the Department of Botany at Sanjivani Arts, Commerce, and Science College, Kopargaon, Maharashtra. With over seven years of teaching and research experience, he has published 45 research articles in reputed journals, including Springer, Elsevier, and Taylor & Francis. He has contributed 20 book chapters and edited 30 books. Holding over 20 patents in India, the UK, and Germany, he also serves as a reviewer for 44 journals and on the editorial boards of 24 journals. His work has earned him numerous awards, including the Best Researcher Award, Young Scientist Award, and Dr. Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan Best Teacher Award. Actively engaged in academic conferences, he has presented research at multiple national and international platforms. His contributions to botany and scientific innovation establish him as a distinguished scholar and educator.

Dr. Bassa Satyannarayana is an Assistant Professor in the Department of Chemistry at Govt. M.G.M. P.G. College, Itarsi, Madhya Pradesh, with over five years of experience in teaching, research, and administration. He serves as the Nodal Officer for SWAYAM courses, College Website Incharge, and Head of the Chemistry Department. He earned his PhD in Chemistry from Andhra University in 2017, specializing in Nano Catalysis and Organic Synthesis. He has cleared multiple national-level exams, including CSIR-UGC-JRF (twice), GATE (five times, ranking 163), and various PSC exams. He has received several accolades, including the Best Academician Award (Elsevier SSRN-2020) and the Vivek Sagar Samman Award. With 7 Indian and 2 Australian patents, 20 research publications, 17 books, and 19 edited books, he has made significant academic contributions. He has also developed e-content under NEP 2020, translated a book into five foreign languages, and actively participates in conferences and workshops.

Smt. Kamireddy Mahalaxmi completed her M.Sc. in Chemistry in 2022 from Govt. MGM P.G. College, Itarsi, affiliated with Barkatullah University, Bhopal, securing the 3rd Merit Rank in the university. She also holds a B.Ed. degree, earned in 2020. Passionate about academics and research, she has authored two book chapters published by reputed national and international publishers. Further showcasing her editorial skills, she has served as an editor for two books published by Bhumi Publishing, India. Her academic journey reflects a strong commitment to both chemistry and education. Through her research contributions and editorial involvement, she demonstrates growing potential as a scholar and educator, aiming to make a meaningful impact in the scientific and academic community. Her dedication continues to drive her forward in the pursuit of excellence in the field of chemistry.

Bhumi Publishing

ISBN 978-93-48620-43-9

9 789348 620439